

# SHIVAJI UNIVERSITY, KOLHAPUR CENTRE FOR DISTANCE EDUCATION 

## Number Theory

(Mathematics)

For
M. Sc. Part-II : Semester-III

Paper (MT 303)
(Academic Year 2021-22 onwards)


## Unit-1

## DIVISIBILITY

1.1 This chapter requires very basic ideas in mathematics. In fact high school mathematics is enough. We now proceed to prove a theorem which is a foundation stone for development in number theory.

## Principle of well - ordering

Every non-empty set $S$ of non-negative integers has a least element. That is, there is $a \in S$ such that $a \leq b$, for all $b \in S$.

## Theorem. (Division Algorithm)

Given integers $a$ and $b$ with $b>0$, there exist unique integers $q$ and $r$ satisfying

$$
a=b q+r, \quad 0 \leq r<b .
$$

The integers $q$ and $r$ are called respectively quotient and remainder in the division of $a$ by $b$.
Proof. Let us consider the set

$$
S=\{a-x b: x \text { is integer, } a-x b \geq 0\} .
$$

Claim : $S$ is non-empty.
Consider $x=-|a|$, then $a-x b=a-(-|a|) b=a+|a| b \geq a+|a| \geq 0$.
Thus $S$ is non empty. Thus by well - ordering principle $S$ has a least element say $r$. Clearly, $0 \leq r$.

Further, there is an integer $q$ such that $r=a-q b$ that is $a=b q+r$.
Claim: $r<b$.
Suppose on the contrary that $r \geq b$.
Consider $\quad a-(q+1) b=(a-q b)-b=r-b \geq 0$. Therefore, $a-(q+1) b \in S$. Thus

$$
a-(q+1)=r-b<r \in S,
$$

which contradicts minimality of $r$. Hence, $r<b$.
Thus, $0 \leq r<b$.
Uniqueness: Let if possible there be integers $q^{\prime}, r^{\prime}$ such that $a=b q^{\prime}+r^{\prime}, 0 \leq r^{\prime}<b$. Thus

$$
b q+r=b q^{\prime}+r^{\prime} \Rightarrow r-r^{\prime}=b\left(q^{\prime}-q\right) \Rightarrow r-r^{\prime}|=b| q^{\prime}-q \mid .
$$

Now, $0 \leq r^{\prime}<b \Rightarrow-b<-r^{\prime} \leq 0$. This together with $0 \leq r<b$, we obtain $-b<r-r^{\prime}<b$. Thus, $\left|r-r^{\prime}\right|<b$. Therefore, $b\left|q^{\prime}-q\right|=\left|r-r^{\prime}\right|<b \Rightarrow\left|q^{\prime}-q\right|<1 \Rightarrow q=q^{\prime}$. Hence $r=r^{\prime}$. This proves uniqueness.

Corollary : If $a$ and $b$ are integers with $b \neq 0$, then there exist integers $q$ and $r$ such that $a=b q+r, \quad 0 \leq r<|b|$.

Proof. If $b>0$ there is nothing to prove. Suppose $b<0$, then $-b>0$. Therefore, there exist unique integers $q$ and $r$ such that $a=(-b) q+r, 0 \leq r<-b$. Thus, $a=b(-q)+r, 0 \leq r<-b$.
Hence, in any case $a=b q+r, \quad 0 \leq r<|b|$.
Ex. 1. Square of an integer is of the form 4 k or $4 \mathrm{k}+1$.
Solution. : We know that any integer is of the form 2 k or $2 \mathrm{k}+1$. Therefore, square of an integer is of the from $(2 k)^{2}=4 k^{2}$ or $(2 k+1)^{2}=4 k^{2}+4 k+1=4 k(k+1)+1$, which is precisely of the form $4 k$ or $4 k+1$.
Notes: 1. Observe that what the above theorem says is that no integer of the form $4 \mathrm{k}+2$ or $4 \mathrm{k}+3$ can ever be perfect square.
2. Square of any odd integer is of the form $8 \mathrm{k}+1$.

Ex. 2. Show that the expression $\frac{a\left(a^{2}+2\right)}{3}$ is an integer for all $a \geq 1$.
Solution. Any integer $a \geq 1$ has one of the form $3 \mathrm{k}, 3 \mathrm{k}+1$ and $3 \mathrm{k}+2$.
$a$ is the form of $3 k$ : Consider
$\frac{a\left(a^{2}+2\right)}{3}=\frac{3 k\left(9 k^{2}+2\right)}{3}=k\left(9 k^{2}+2\right)$, which is an integer.
$a$ is of the form $3 k+1:$ Consider
$\frac{a\left(a^{2}+2\right)}{3}=\frac{(3 k+1)\left(9 k^{2}+6 k+3\right)}{3}=(3 k+1)\left(3 k^{2}+2 k+1\right)$, an integer.
$a$ is of the form $3 k+2:$ Consider
$\frac{a\left(a^{2}+2\right)}{3}=\frac{(3 k+2)\left(9 k^{2}+12 k+6\right)}{3}=(3 k+2)\left(3 k^{2}+4 k+2\right)$, an integer.
Thus is any case $\frac{a\left(a^{2}+2\right)}{3}$ is an integer.
Ex.3. Prove that any integer of the form of $6 \mathrm{k}+5$ is also of the form $3 \mathrm{j}+2$ but not conversely.

Solution. Any integer of the form $6 \mathrm{k}+5$ is can be written as

$$
6 k+5=6 k+3+2=3(2 k+1)+2=3 j+2
$$

The integer 8 is of the form $3 \mathrm{j}+2$ but not the form $6 \mathrm{k}+5$.

Ex.4. The square of any integer is of the form 3 k or $3 \mathrm{k}+1$.
Solution. Any integer $a$ has one of the three form $3 \mathrm{k}, 3 \mathrm{k}+1$ or $3 \mathrm{k}+2$.
Form $3 \mathrm{k}:(3 k)^{2}=9 k^{2}=3\left(3 k^{2}\right)$
That is, of the form of 3 k .
Form $3 \mathrm{k}+1:(3 k+1)^{2}=9 k^{2}+6 k+1=3\left(3 k^{2}+2 k\right)+1$.
That is the form of $3 \mathrm{k}+1$.
Form $3 \mathrm{k}+2:(3 k+2)^{2}=9 k^{2}+12 k+4=3\left(3 k^{2}+4 k+1\right)+1$
This is the form of $3 \mathrm{k}+1$
Ex. 5. Prove that $3 a^{2}-1$ is never a perfect square .
Solution. We know that square of an integer is of the form 3 k or $3 \mathrm{k}+1$ i.e. no number of the form $3 \mathrm{k}+2$ can ever be a perfect square. Observe that,
$3 a^{2}-1=3\left(a^{2}-1\right)+2$ is of the form $3 \mathrm{k}+2$ and hence it can never be a perfect square.
Ex.6. Prove that cube of an integer has one of the form $9 \mathrm{k}, 9 \mathrm{k}+1,9 \mathrm{k}+8$.
Solution. Any integer has one of the forms $3 \mathrm{k}, 3 \mathrm{k}+1$ or $3 \mathrm{k}+2$.
Form 3k : $(3 k)^{3}=27 k^{3}=9\left(3 k^{3}\right)$.
This is the form of 9 k .
Form $3 \mathrm{k}+1:(3 k+1)^{3}=27 k^{3}+27 k^{2}+9 k+1=9\left(3 k^{3}+3 k^{2}+k\right)+1$.
This is the form of $9 \mathrm{k}+1$.
Form $3 \mathrm{k}+2:(3 k+2)^{3}=27 k^{3}+54 k^{2}+36 k+8=9\left(3 k^{3}+6 k^{2}+4 k\right)+8$.
This is of the form $9 \mathrm{k}+8$.
Ex.7. Prove that for any integer $a$ one of the integers $a, a+2, a+4$ is divisible by 3 .
Solution. Any integer is of the form $3 k, 3 k+1$, or $3 k+2$. Let $a$ be of the form $3 k$ then a is divisible by 3 , now if $a$ is of the form $3 k+1$, then $a+2$ is divisible by 3 and finally if $a$ is of the form $3 k+2$, then $a+4$ is divisible by 3 .

Ex.8. Prove that sum of squares of two odd integers cannot be a perfect square.
Solution,. We know that, square of an odd integers is of the form $8 \mathrm{k}+1$. There are two odd integers so that sum of squares of two odd integers is of the form $(8 m+1)+(8 n+1)=$ $8(\mathrm{~m}+\mathrm{n})+2$. That is, sum of squares of an odd integers is of the form $8 \mathrm{k}+2$ which can never be a perfect square.
Ex.9. Prove that the product of four consecutive integer is 1 less than a perfect square.
Solution. It is enough to prove that

$$
a(a+1)(a+2)(a+3)+1 \text { is a perfect square. }
$$

Consider

$$
a(a+1)(a+2)(a+3)+1=a\left(a^{3}+6 a^{2}+11 a+6\right)+1 .
$$

Also consider

$$
\begin{aligned}
& {[(a+1)(a+2)-1]^{2}=(a+1)^{2}(a+2)^{2}-2(a+1)(a+2)+1} \\
& \quad=\left(a^{2}+2 a+1\right)\left(a^{2}+4 a+4\right)-2\left(a^{2}+3 a+2\right)+1 \\
& \quad=a^{4}+4 a^{3}+4 a^{2}+2 a^{3}+8 a^{2}+8 a+a^{2}+4 a+4-2 a^{2}-6 a-4+1 \\
& \quad=a^{4}+6 a^{3}+11 a^{2}+6 a+1 \\
& \quad=a\left(a^{3}+6 a^{2}+11 a+6\right)+1 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus $a\left(a^{3}+6 a^{2}+11 a+6\right)+1=[(a+1)(a+2)-1]^{2}$.
(Also

$$
\begin{aligned}
& {[a(a+3)+1]^{2}=a^{2}(a+3)^{2}+2 a(a+3)+1} \\
& =a^{2}\left(a^{2}+6 a+9\right)+2 a^{2}+6 a+1 \\
& =a^{4}+6 a^{3}+9 a^{2}+2 a^{2}+6 a+1 \\
& =a^{4}+6 a^{3}+11 a^{2}+6 a+1 \\
& =a\left(a^{3}+6 a^{2}+11 a+6\right)+1
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus,

$$
\left.a\left(a^{3}+6 a^{2}+11 a+6\right)+1=[(a+1)(a+2)-1]^{2}=[a(a+3)+1]^{2}\right)
$$

Thus, $a(a+1)(a+2)(a+3)+1$ is a perfect square.
Ex.10. Establish that the difference of two consecutive cubes is never divisible by 2 .
Solution. Let the consecutive numbers be $a$ and $a+1$.
Consider, $(a+1)^{3}-a^{3}=3 a^{2}+3 a+1=3 a(a+1)+1$.
Since $a(a+1)$ is always of the form 2 k , that is divisible by 2 . Therefore difference of two consecutive cubes is of the form $2 \mathrm{k}+1$ which is never divisible by 2 .

## EXERCISES 1.1.

1. The $4^{\text {th }}$ power of any integer is either of the form 5 k or $5 \mathrm{k}+1$.
2. For $n \geq 1$, prove that $\frac{n(n+1)(2 n+1)}{6}$ is an integer.
3. For $n \geq 1$, prove that $\frac{n(n+1)(n+2)}{6}$ is an integer.

### 1.2 Divisibility

Definition: Let $a(a \neq 0)$ and $b$ be integers then we say that $a$ divides $b$ if there is an integer $c$ such that $a c=b$ in this case we write $a \mid b$.

Theorem : For integers $a, b, c$ the following hold
a) $a|0,1| a, a \mid a$
b) $\quad a \mid 1$ iff $a= \pm 1$
c) If $a \mid b$ and $c \mid d$, then $a c \mid b d$.
d) If $a \mid b$ and $b \mid c$, then $a \mid c$.
e) $a \mid b$ and $b \mid a$, iff $a= \pm b$.
f) If $a \mid b$ and $b \neq 0$, then $|a| \leq|b|$.
g) If $a \mid b$ and $a \mid c$, then $a \mid b x+c y$ for arbitrary integers $x$ and $y$.

Proof. a) $a \cdot 0=0 \Rightarrow a|0 ; 1 \cdot a=a \Rightarrow 1| a ; a \cdot 1=a \Rightarrow a \mid a$.
b) $a \mid 1 \Leftrightarrow a b=1$ for some integer $\mathrm{b} \Leftrightarrow a= \pm 1$.
c) $a \mid b$ and $c \mid d \Rightarrow a a_{1}=b$ and $c c_{1}=d \Rightarrow a a_{1} \cdot c c_{1}=b d \Rightarrow a c\left(a_{1} c_{2}\right)=b d \Rightarrow a c \mid b d$.
d) $a \mid b$ and $b \mid c \Rightarrow a a^{\prime}=b$ and $b b^{\prime}=c \Rightarrow a a^{\prime} \cdot b^{\prime}=c \Rightarrow a \mid c$.
e) $a \mid b$ and $b \mid a \Rightarrow a a^{\prime}=b$ and $b b^{\prime}=a \Rightarrow a a^{\prime} b^{\prime}=a \Rightarrow a^{\prime} b^{\prime}=1$

$$
\Rightarrow a^{\prime}= \pm 1 \text { and } b^{\prime}= \pm 1 .
$$

Thus $a= \pm b$.
f) $a \mid b$ and $b \neq 0 \Rightarrow a a^{\prime}=b$ with $a^{\prime} \neq 0 \Rightarrow|a|\left|a^{\prime}\right|=|b| \Rightarrow|a| \leq|b|$ (because $\left|a^{\prime}\right| \geq 1$ ).
g) $a \mid b$ and $a \mid c \Rightarrow a a^{\prime}=b$ and $a a^{\prime \prime}=c \Rightarrow b x+c y=a a^{\prime} x+a a^{\prime \prime} y=a\left(a^{\prime} x+a^{\prime \prime} y\right)$.

Thus $a \mid b x+c y$.
Definition (Common Divisor):Let $a$ and $b$ be two integers at least one of which is non zero, an integer $c$ is common divisor of $a$ and $b$, if $c \mid a$ and $c \mid b$.

Definition (Greatest Common Divisor):Let $a$ and $b$ be two integers at least one of which is non zero. Then a positive integer $d$ is a greatest common divisor of $a$ and $b$ if
a) $d \mid a$ and $d \mid b$
b) whenever $c$ is a positive integer such that $c \mid a$ and $c \mid b$ then $c \leq d$.

Theorem. Given integers $a$ and $b$ not both of which are zero, there exist integers $x$ and $y$ such that $\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)=a x+b y$.

Proof. Let us define

$$
S=\{a u+b v: a u+b v>0, u, v \text { are integers }\} .
$$

[^0]Note that $|a|=a u+b .0$ where $u=1$ and $u=-1$ according as $a>0$ and $a<0$. Therefore, $S$ is non-empty set of positive integers. Hence, we can invoke principle of well-ordering which assures of a least positive integer $d \in S$. Therefore, there exist integers $x$ and $y$ such that $d=a x+b y$.

By division algorithm there exists integers $q$ and $r$ such that,

$$
a=d q+r, \quad 0 \leq r \leq d .
$$

Then

$$
r=a-d q=a-(a x+b y) q=a(1-x q)+b(-y q)
$$

Hence, $r \in S$. But it contradicts minimality of d unless $r=0$. Thus $r=0$. Therefore $a=d q$ and so $d \mid a$ and similarly $d \mid b$.

Let $c$ be a positive common divisor of $a$ and $b$, then $c \mid a$ and $c \mid b$ hence $c \mid a x+b y=d$. Thus $c \mid d$. Therefore, $c=|c| \leq|d|=d$. Thus $d$ is gcd of $a$ and $b$.

Corollary - If $a$ and $b$ are given integers not both zero. Then the set $S=\{a x+b y: x, y$ integers $\}$ is precisely the set of all multiples of $d=\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)$.

Proof. Suppose $d=\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)$ so that $d \mid a$ and $d \mid b$. Hence, $d \mid a x+b y$, that is, $a x+b y$ is multiple of d . On the other hand $d=\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)$, then there exist integers $u, v$ such that $d=a u+b v$. Therefore, $c d=a(c u)+b(c v)$ is of the form $a x+b y$.

## Definition (Relativity Prime integers)

Two integers $a$ and $b$, not both of which are zero, are relativity prime if $\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)=1$.
Theorem - Let $a$ and $b$ be integers, not both zero then $a$ and $b$ are relativity prime if and only if there exist integers $x$ and $y$ such that $1=a x+b y$

Proof. Suppose $a$ and $b$ are relativity prime then $\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)=1$ and there exist integers $x$ and $y$ such that $a x+b y=1$. Conversely, suppose $a x+b y=1$. Let $d=\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)$, then $d \mid a$ and $d \mid b$ . Therefore, $d \mid a x+b y=1$. Since $d>0$ and $d \mid 1$, we must have $d=1$. Hence, $a$ and $b$ are relatively prime.
Corollary 1.If $\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)=d$ then $\operatorname{gcd}\left(\frac{a}{d}, \frac{b}{d}\right)=1$.
Proof. Suppose $d=\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)$, then $d \mid a$ and $d \mid b$, so that $\frac{a}{d}$ and $\frac{b}{d}$ are integers. Since $d=\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)$ there exist two integers $x$ and $y$ such that $d=a x+b y$ so that $1=\frac{a}{d} x+\frac{b}{d} y$. Hence, $\operatorname{gcd}\left(\frac{a}{d}, \frac{b}{d}\right)=1$.

Corollary 2. Let $a \mid c$ and $b \mid c$ with $\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)=1$, then $a b \mid c$.

Proof. Since $\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)=1$ and there exist integers $x$ and $y$ such that $a x+b y=1$, so that $c=c \cdot 1=c \cdot(a x+b y)=(c a) x+(c b) y$. Since $a \mid c$ and $b \mid c$ there exist integers $u$ and $v$ such that $a u=c$ and $b v=c$. Thus $c=(c a) x+(c b) y=(a b) v x+(a b) u y=(a b)(v x+u y)$. Therefore, $a b \mid c$.

Note : Let $a=6, b=4$ and $c=12$. Here $\operatorname{gcd}(6,4)=2 \neq 1$ and $6 \mid 12$ also $4 \mid 12$ but $24 \backslash 12$.
On the other hand, let $a=6, b=4$ and $c=24$. Here $\operatorname{gcd}(6,4)=2 \neq 1$ and $6 \mid 24$ also $4 \mid 24$ and $24 \mid 24$. Therefore, $\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)=1$ is sufficient but not necessary for $a b \mid c$.
Theorem - (Euclid's Lemma) If $a \mid b c$ with $\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)=1$, then $a \mid c$.
Proof. Suppose $\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)=1$, then there exist two integers $x$ and $y$ such that $a x+b y=1$.
Thus $c(a x+b y)=c .1=c \Rightarrow a c x+b c y=c$. Since $a|b c, a| a c x+b c y=c$.
Note. Consider the example, $12 \mid 6 \times 8$ with $\operatorname{gcd}(12,6)=6 \neq 1$, here $12 \nmid 8$.
Ex. Give integers $a, b, c$ such that $a \mid b c, \operatorname{gcd}(a, b) \neq 1$ but still $a \mid c$. In other words $\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)$ $=1$ is sufficient but not necessary in the above result.
Theorem. Let $a$ and $b$ be integers not both zero. For a positive integer $d, d=\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)$ if and only if
i) $d \mid a$ and $d \mid b$
ii) whenever $c \mid a$ and $c \mid b$, then $c \mid d$.

Proof.Suppose $d=\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)$, then by definition (i) is obvious. Since $d=\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)$, there exist integers $x$ and $y$ such that $d=a x+b y$. Now $c \mid a$ and $c \mid b$ implies $c \mid a x+b y=d$. Hence, $c \mid d$.

Conversely, suppose that the conditions hold. To prove that $d=\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)$, the first condition of gcd is already satisfied, so it remains to prove that the given conditions imply the second condition of gcd. Suppose that c is a positive integer such that $c \mid a$ and $c \mid b$, then by hypothesis (ii), $c \mid d$ this implies $c=|c| \leq|d|=d$.

Least common multiple(lcm). The least common multiple of two nonzero integers $a$ and $b$, denoted by $\operatorname{lcm}(a, b)$, is the positive integer $m$ satisfying the following conditions
i) $a \mid m$ and $b \mid m$
ii) If $a \mid c$ and $b \mid c$, with $c>0$, then $m \leq c$.

Note: Given non zero integers $a$ and $b, \operatorname{lcm}(a, b)$ always exists and that $\operatorname{lcm}(a, b) \leq|a b|$.
We shall now prove relation between gcd and 1 cm .
Theorem: Let $a$ and $b$ be positive integers then, $\operatorname{lcm}(a, b) \operatorname{gcd}(a, b)=a b$.
Proof.Let $d=\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)$, then $d \mid a$ and $d \mid b$, so that there exist integers $r$ and $s$ such that $a=d r$ and $b=d s$. Let $m=\frac{a b}{d}$, then $m=r b$ and $m=a s$ so that $a \mid m$ and $b \mid m$, that is $m$ is common multiple of $a$ and $b$.

We shall prove that $m$ is lcm of $a$ and $b$. Let $c$ be a positive common multiple of $a$ and $b$. Then $c=a u=b v$ for some integers $u$ and $v$. Since $d=\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)$, there exist integers $x$ and $y$ such that $d=a x+b y$. Consider

$$
\frac{c}{m}=\frac{c d}{m d}=\frac{c d}{a b}=\frac{c(a x+b y)}{a b}=\frac{c}{b} x+\frac{c}{a} y=v x+u y(\text { Since } \mathrm{md}=\mathrm{ab})
$$

which is an integer. Thus $\frac{c}{m} \geq 1 \Rightarrow c \geq m$. Therefore, $m=\operatorname{lcm}(a, b)$. Thus $\operatorname{lcm}(a, b)=\frac{a b}{d}$, that is $\operatorname{lcm}(a, b) \operatorname{gcd}(a, b)=a b$.

We shall now go through some illustrative examples
Ex.1. Prove that, for a positive integer n and any integer $a, \operatorname{gcd}(a, a+n)$ divides n , hence $\operatorname{gcd}(a, a+1)=1$.

Solution. Let $d=\operatorname{gcd}(a, a+n)$, then $d \mid a$ and $d \mid a+n$ implies $d \mid a+n-a=n$.
Thus if $d=\operatorname{gcd}(a, a+1)$ then $d \mid 1 \Rightarrow d=1$.
Ex.2. Assuming that $\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)=1$ prove that $\operatorname{gcd}(a+b, a-b)=1$ or 2 .
Solution.Let $d=\operatorname{gcd}(a+b, a-b)$, then $d \mid a+b$ and $d \mid a-b$.
Thus $d \mid(a+b)+(a-b)=2 a$ and $d \mid(a+b)-(a-b)=2 b$.
Since $\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)=1$, there exist integers $x$ and $y$ such that $a x+b y=1$. Therefore, $d \mid 2(a x+b y)=2(1)=2$. Thus $d=1$ or $d=2$.

Ex.3. Prove that, if $a$ and $b$ are both odd integers then $16 \mid a^{4}+b^{4}-2$.
Solution. We know that the square of an odd integer is of the form $8 \mathrm{k}+1$. Hence

$$
\begin{aligned}
a^{4}+b^{4}-2=(8 m+1)^{2}+(8 n+1)^{2}-2 . & =\left(64\left(m^{2}+n^{2}\right)+16(m+n)\right. \\
& =16\left[4\left(m^{2}+n^{2}\right)+(m+n)\right.
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus $16 \mid a^{4}+b^{4}-2$
Lemma. If $a=b q+r$, then $\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)=\operatorname{gcd}(b, r)$.
Proof. Let $d=\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)$ then $d \mid a$ and $d \mid b$. Let $d^{\prime}=\operatorname{gcd}(b, r)$. Now $d \mid a$ and $d|b \Rightarrow d| a-$ $b q=r$ and $d|b \Rightarrow d| b$ and $d \mid r \Rightarrow d \leq d^{\prime}$. On the other hand $d^{\prime}=\operatorname{gcd}(b, r) \Rightarrow d^{\prime} \mid b$ and $d^{\prime} \mid r$ $\Rightarrow d^{\prime} \mid b q+r$ and $d^{\prime}\left|b \Rightarrow d^{\prime}\right| a$ and $d^{\prime} \mid b \Rightarrow d^{\prime} \geq d$. Thus $d=d^{\prime}$, that is, $\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)=\operatorname{gcd}(b, r)$
Using this lemma we can find gcd of given two numbers as follows.
Ex. 1 Find $\operatorname{gcd}(12378,3054)$ and express $\operatorname{gcd}(12378,3054)$ as $12378 x+3054 y$.
Solution. Consider

$$
\begin{aligned}
12378 & =3054 \times 4+162 \\
3054 & =162 \times 18+138
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
162 & =138 \times 1+24 \\
138 & =24 \times 5+18 \\
24 & =18 \times 1+\underline{6} \\
18 & =\underline{6} \times 3+0
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus $\operatorname{gcd}(12378,3054)=6$.
(Note. We can find gcd in fewer steps as follows.
$12378=3054 \times 4+162$
$3054=162 \times 19-24$
$162=24 \times 7-\underline{6}$
$24=6 \times 4+0$.
What we have done here is that of the two possible remainders $162(12378=3054 \times 4+162)$ and $162-3054=-2892(12378=3054 x 5-2892)$ we choose numerically smaller value 162 , further, we choose 24 from the two possible values 138 and $138-162=-24$. This technique reduces number of steps. )
Here, $\operatorname{gcd}(12378,3054)=\operatorname{gcd}(3054,162)=\operatorname{gcd}(162,138)=\operatorname{gcd}(138,24)=\operatorname{gcd}(2,18)=6$.
Now, we shall express gcd as $12378 x+3054 y$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
6 & =24-18 \times 1 \\
& =24-(138-24 \times 5) \\
& =-138+24 \times 6 \\
& =-138+(162-138 \times 1) 6 \\
& =162 \times 6-138 \times 7 \\
& =162 \times 6-(3054-162 \times 18) \times 7 \\
& =162 \times 132-3054 \times 7 \\
& =(12378-3054 \times 4) \times 132-3054 \times 7 \\
& =12378 \times 132+3054(-535)
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus $6=12378 \times 132+3054(-535)$.
Theorem. If $k>0$, then $\operatorname{gcd}(k a, k b)=k \cdot \operatorname{gcd}(a, b)$.
Proof. Let $d=\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)$ then $d \mid a$ and $d \mid b$. Therefore for any $k>0, k d>0$ and $k d \mid k a$ also $k d \mid k b$. Let c be a positive integer such that $c \mid k a$ and $c \mid k b$. Since $d=\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)$, there exist integers $x$ and $y$ such that $d=a x+b y$. Thus $c \mid k a$ and $c|k b \Rightarrow c| k(a x+b y)=k d$. Hence, $k d=\operatorname{gcd}(k a, k b)$. Thus, $\operatorname{gcd}(k a, k b)=k \cdot \operatorname{gcd}(a, b)$.

Corollary. For any integer $k \neq 0, \operatorname{gcd}(k a, k b)=|k| \operatorname{gcd}(a, b)$.
Proof. If $k>0$ there is nothing to prove. Let $k<0$, then there is $m>0$ such that $k=-m$.

Therefore, $\operatorname{gcd}(m a, m b)=m \cdot \operatorname{gcd}(a ; b) \Rightarrow \operatorname{gcd}(-k a,-k b)=-k \cdot \operatorname{gcd}(a, b)$. Hence, $\operatorname{gcd}(k a, k b)=|k| \cdot \operatorname{gcd}(a, b)$.

## Exercises 1.2.

1. If $a \mid b$, show that $(-a)|b, a|(-b),(-a) \mid(-b)$.
2. If $a \mid b$, then prove that $a \mid b c$.
3. If $a \mid b$, then prove that $a c \mid b c$. Is the converse true.
4. Prove or disprove. If $a \mid b+c$ then $a \mid b$ or $a \mid c$.
5. Assuming that $\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)=1$, prove that $\operatorname{gcd}(2 a+b, a+2 b)=1$ or 3 .
6. If $\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)=1$, then for any nonzero integer $c, \operatorname{gcd}(a c, b)=\operatorname{gcd}(c, b)$.
7. Use Euclid's algorithm to find integer $x$ and $y$ such that, $\operatorname{gcd}(56,72)=56 x+72 y$.
8. Use Euclid's algorithm to find integer $x$ and $y$ such that,
$\operatorname{gcd}(143,227)=143 x+227 y$.

### 1.3. Diophantine Equations

In general any equation in one or more unknowns which is to be solved in integers is Diophantine equation.

The name honours the Greek mathematician Diophantus. There is an interesting problems saying something about how long did Diophantus lived?
Ex.1. His boyhood lasted $1 / 6^{\text {th }}$ of his life; his beard grew after $1 / 12^{\text {th }}$ more, after $1 / 7^{\text {th }}$ more he married, and his son was born 5 years later. The son lived to $1 / 2$ th his father age and the father died after four years after his son

Solution. Let $x$ be the age of Diophantus when he died. From the given information we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{1}{6} x+\frac{1}{12} x+\frac{1}{7} x+5+\frac{1}{2} x+4=x \\
& \Rightarrow \frac{1}{6} x+\frac{1}{12} x+\frac{1}{7} x++\frac{1}{2} x+9=x \\
& \Rightarrow \frac{2}{12} x+\frac{1}{12} x+\frac{1}{7} x+\frac{1}{2} x+9=x \\
& \Rightarrow \frac{2 x+x+6 x}{12}+\frac{1}{7} x+9=x \\
& \Rightarrow \frac{9 x}{12}+\frac{1}{7} x-x+9=0
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \Rightarrow \frac{7 \times 9 x+12 x-84 x}{84}+9=0 \\
& \Rightarrow \frac{63 x+12 x-84 x}{84}+9=0 \\
& \Rightarrow \frac{-3 x}{28}+9=0 \Rightarrow 9=\frac{3 x}{28} \Rightarrow 3 x=252 \\
& \Rightarrow x=84
\end{aligned}
$$

Note. Diophantine equations may be of any degree and in any number of (variable) unknowns. However in this course, we are interested in linear Diophantine questions of the form $a x+b y=c$. A Diophantine equation may have number of solutions.
e.g.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 3.4+6.1=18 \\
& 3.2+6.2=18 \\
& 3(-2)+6.4=18
\end{aligned}
$$

That is $(4,1),(2,2),(-2,4)$ are all solutions of $3 x+6 y=18$.
Theorem. The linear Diophantine equation $a x+b y=c$ has a solution if and only if $d \mid c$ where $d=\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)$. If $x_{0}, y_{0}$ is any particular solution of this equation then all other solutions are given by $x=x_{0}+\left(\frac{b}{d}\right) t, y=y_{0}-\left(\frac{a}{d}\right) t$ where ' t ' is any arbitrary integer.

Proof - Let $d=\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)$ then $d \mid a$ and $d \mid b$. Suppose $a x+b y=c$ has a solution, that is, there exist integers $x$ and $y$ such that $a x+b y=c$. Since $d \mid a$ and $d \mid b$, we have $d \mid a x+b y=c$. Thus $d \mid c$.

Conversely, suppose that $d \mid c$. Since $d=\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)$, there exist integers $x_{0}$ and $y_{0}$ such that $d=a x_{0}+b y_{0}$. Since $d \mid c$ there is an integer $r$ such that $d r=c$.Thus,

$$
c=d r=\left(a x_{0}+b y_{0}\right) r=a\left(x_{0} r\right)+b\left(y_{0} r\right)
$$

Hence $x=x_{0} r, y=y_{0} r$ is a solution of $a x+b y=c$.
This proves the first part of the theorem.
Suppose that, $a x+b y=c$ has a solution $\left(x_{0}, y_{0}\right)$ then $a x_{0}+b y_{0}=c$.
Let $(x, y)$ be any solution of $a x+b y=c$, then

$$
\begin{equation*}
a x+b y=a x_{0}+b y_{0} \Rightarrow a\left(x-x_{0}\right)=b\left(y-y_{0}\right) \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since $d=\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)$, there exist relatively prime integers r and s such that, $d r=a$ and $d s=b$. Thus (1) becomes

$$
d r\left(x-x_{0}\right)=d s\left(y_{0}-y\right)
$$

$$
\Rightarrow r\left(x-x_{0}\right)=s\left(y_{0}-y\right)
$$

Since $r \mid r\left(x-x_{0}\right)=s\left(y_{0}-y\right)$ and $\operatorname{gcd}(r, s)=1$ by invoking Euclid's lemma, we obtain $r \mid y_{0}-y$.

Therefore, there is an integer ' $t$ ' such that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& y_{0}-y=r t \\
& \Rightarrow y=y_{0}-r t \\
& \Rightarrow y=y_{0}-\left(\frac{a}{d}\right) t
\end{aligned}
$$

Further, $x-x_{0}=s t$
$\Rightarrow x=x_{0}+s t$
$\Rightarrow x=x_{0}+\left(\frac{b}{d}\right) t$
Let $x^{1}=x_{0}+\frac{b}{d} t$ and $y^{1}=y_{0}-\frac{a}{d} t$, then

$$
a x^{1}+b y^{1}=a\left(x_{0}+\frac{b}{d} t\right)+b\left(y_{0}-\frac{a}{d} t\right)=a x_{0}+b y_{0}=c .
$$

Thus every other solution of $a x+b y=c$ is of the form $x=x_{0}+\frac{b}{d} t$ and $y=y_{0}-\frac{a}{d} t$ where ' $t$ ' is an arbitrary integer.

Note.Thus there are infinitely many solutions of the given equation, one for each value of ' $t$ '.
Ex.1. Solve $172 x+20 y=1000$.
Solution. Here $\operatorname{gcd}(172,20)=4$ and $4 \mid 1000$. Therefore given Diophantine equation has a solution.

Consider,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 172=20 \times 8+12 \\
& 20=12 \times 1+8 \\
& 12=8 \times 1+4 \\
& 8=4 \times 2+0 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus $\operatorname{gcd}(172,20)=4$. Now

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 4=12-8 \times 1 \\
& =12-(20-12 \times 1) 1
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& =12 \times 2-20 \\
& =(172-20 \times 8) \times 2-20 \\
& =172 \times 2-20 \times 17 \\
& 4=172(2)+20(-17)
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus

$$
4=172(2)+20(-17)
$$

Multiplying both sides by 250 , we obtain

$$
1000=172(500)+20(-4250)
$$

Thus, $(500,-4250)$ is a solution of given Diophantine equation.
General solution of given Diophantine equation is

$$
x=x_{0}+\frac{b}{d} t=500+\frac{20}{4} t=500+5 t
$$

and

$$
y=y_{0}-\frac{a}{d} t=-4250-\frac{172}{4} t=-4250-43 t .
$$

Thus, $(500+5 t,-4250-43 t)$ is general solution where ' $t$ ' is an arbitrary integer.
We can proceed further to test whether the given equation has positive solution.
Consider,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 500+5 t>0 \text { and }-4250+43 t>0 \\
& \Rightarrow t>-100 \text { and } t \leq \frac{-4250}{43}=-98.8 \\
& \Rightarrow t=-99 \\
& \Rightarrow x=5 \text { and } y=7
\end{aligned}
$$



Thus $(5,7)$ is the positive solution and that it is only positive solution.
Corollary. If $\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)=1$ and it $x_{0}, y_{0}$ is particular solution of linear Diophantine equation $a x+b y=c$ then all the solution are given by, $x=x_{0}+b t, y=y_{0}-a t$.

Note : Certain Diophantive equations need not have positive solution at all.
Note. Each of the following Diophantine equations do not have solution.
a) $6 x+51 y=22$
b) $33 x+14 y=115$
c) $14 x+35 y=93$.

Ex.2. Determine all solution in the integers of the following Diophantine equation
a) $56 x+72 y=40$,
b) $24 x+138 y=18$,
c) $221 x+35 y=11$.

Solution. a) First of all we shall find the gcd of 56 and 72. Consider

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 72=56 \times 1+16 \\
& 56=16 \times 3+8 \\
& 16=8 \times 2+0 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus $\operatorname{gcd}(56,72)=8$ and that $8 \mid 16$, therefore solution exists.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\text { Now } & 8=56-16 \times 3 \\
= & 56-3 \times(72-56) \\
= & 56 \times 4+72 \times(-3) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus, $8=56 \times 4+72 \times(-3)$.
Multiplying both sides by 5 , we get,

$$
40=56 \times 20+72 \times(-15)
$$

Thus, $(20,-15)$ is solution of given Diophantine equation.
General solution of given Diophantine equation is

$$
\begin{aligned}
& x=x_{0}+\frac{b}{d} t \quad y=y_{0}-\frac{a}{d} t \\
& x=20+\frac{72}{8} t \quad y=-15-\frac{56}{8} t \\
& x=20+9 t \quad y=-15-7 t .
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus, $(20-9 t,-15-7 t)$ is general solution,where ' t ' is arbitrary integer.
We can proceed further to test whether the given equation has positive solution.
Consider,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 20+9 t>0-15-7 t>0 \\
& t>\frac{-20}{9} t<\frac{-15}{7} \\
& t>-2.22 t<-2.14
\end{aligned}
$$

Observe that there is no integer $t$ satisfying the given conditions. Hence, there is no positive solution.
b) $24 x+138 y=18$

Here $\quad \operatorname{gcd}(24,138)=6$ and that $6 \mid 18$.
Therefore, the given Diophantine equation has a solution.
Consider,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 138=24 \times 5+18 \\
& 24=18 \times 1+6 \\
& 18=6 \times 3+0
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus, $\quad \operatorname{gcd}(24,138)=6$. Now

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 6=24-18 \times 1 \\
& =24-(138-24 \times 5) \\
& =24 \times 6+138(-1) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus

$$
6=24 \times 6+138(-1)
$$

Multiplying both the sides by 3 .

$$
18=24 \times 18+138 \times(-3)
$$

Thus $(18,-3)$ is solution of given equation. The general solution of the given equation is

$$
\begin{aligned}
& x=x_{0}+\frac{b}{d} t \quad y=y_{0}-\frac{a}{d} t \\
& x=18+\frac{138}{6} t \quad y=(-3)-\frac{24}{6} t \\
& x=18+23 t \quad y=-3-4 t .
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus, $(18+23 t,-3-4 t)$ is general solution, where ' $t$ ' is arbitrary integer.
We can proceed further to test whether the given equation has positive solution.
Consider,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 18+23 t>0-3-4 t>0 \\
& 23 t>-18-4 t<3 \\
& t>\frac{-18}{23} t<\frac{-3}{4} \\
& \Rightarrow t>-0.7826 t<-0.75 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Observe that there is no integer t satisfying the given conditions. Hence, there is no positive solution.
c) $221 x+35 y=11$.

Here $\operatorname{gcd}(221,35)=1$ and $1 \mid 11$

Therefore the given Diophantine equation has a solution.
Consider,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 221=35 \times 6+11 \\
& 35=11 \times 3+2 \\
& 11=2 \times 5+1 \\
& 2=2 \times 1+0 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore, $\operatorname{gcd}(221,35)=1$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { Now } 1=11-2 \times 5 \\
& =11-5 \times(35-11 \times 3) \\
& =35 \times(-5)+11 \times 16 \\
& =35 \times(-5)+16 \times(221-35 \times 6)
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus $1=221 \times 16+35 \times(-101)$.
Multiplying on both sides by 11 , we get

$$
11=221 \times 16+35 \times(-1111) .
$$

Thus $(176,-1111)$ is solution of given Diophantine equation.
General solution of given Diophantine equation

$$
\begin{aligned}
& x=x_{0}+\frac{b}{d} t \quad y=y_{0}-\frac{a}{d} t \\
& x=176+\frac{35}{1} t \quad y=(-1111)-\frac{221}{1} t \\
& x=176+35 t \quad y=-1111-221 t
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus, $(176+35 t,-1111-221 t)$ is general solution. Where ' t ' is arbitrary integer.
We can proceed further to test whether the given equation has positive solution.
Consider,

$$
176+35 t>0 \Rightarrow t>\frac{-176}{35} \Rightarrow t>-5.028
$$

and

$$
-1111-221 t<0 \text { implies } t<\frac{-1111}{221} \Rightarrow t<-5.0271 .
$$

Observe that there is no integer $t$ satisfying the given conditions. Hence, there is no positive solution.

Ex.3. A customer brought a dozen pieces of fruit apples and oranges, for $\$ 1.32$. If an apple costs 3 - cents more than an orange and more apples than oranges were purchased. How many pieces of each kind were brought?
Solution - Let $x$ be the number of apples and $y$ be the number of oranges. Let $z$ be the cost of oranges .

Then, $x+y=12$
And $(z+3) x+z y=132$
From (2) we have

$$
\begin{align*}
& z(x+y)+3 x=132 \\
& \Rightarrow 12 z+3 x=132 \\
& \Rightarrow 4 z+x=44 \tag{3}
\end{align*}
$$

Here $\operatorname{gcd}(1,4)=1$ and $1 \mid 44$
Hence, Equation (3) has a solution. Now

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 1=4 \times 1+1(-3) \\
& \Rightarrow 44=4(44)+1(-132)
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus (44, -132) is a particular solution.
General Solution is,

$$
\begin{equation*}
z=44+t, x=-132-4 t \tag{4}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $t$ is any integer.
For positive solution we must have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 44+t>0 \text { and }-132-4 t>0 \\
& \Rightarrow t>-44 \text { and } t<-33 \Rightarrow-44<t<-33 .
\end{aligned}
$$

We shall now prepare the table of permissible values of $x, y$ and $z$. In view of Equation(1) and Equation (4), we have

| t | z | x | y | $(\mathrm{z}+3) \mathrm{x}+\mathrm{zy}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| -35 | 9 | 8 | 4 | 132 |
| -34 | 10 | 4 | 8 | 132 |

Thus $x=8, y=4$ or $x=8, y=4$ are two possible solutions.
We have not listed other values of $t$ because the values of x or y is zero or negative in those cases.

Since number of apples is more than oranges $x=8, y=4$ is the solution.
Ex. 4. If a cock is worth 5 coins a hen 3 coins and three chicks together 1 coin how many cocks, hens and chicks totaling 100 can be brought for 100 coins.

Solution. Let $x$ be the number of cocks $y$ be the number of hens and ' $z$ ' be the number of chicks.

Then $5 x+3 y+\frac{z}{3}=100$
And $x+y+z=100$
Thus $15 x+9 y+z=300$,
$x+y+z=100$.
From (1) and (2) we obtain
$4 x+8 y=200$.
That is $7 x+4 y=100$.
(3)

Here $\operatorname{gcd}(7,4)=1 \mid 100$. Hence equation (3) has a solution.
Now1 $=7(-1)+4(2) \Rightarrow 100=7 \times(-100)+4(200)$.
Thus, $(-100,200)$ is a particular solution of given Diophantine equation.
General solution is
$x=x_{0}+\frac{b}{d} t y=y_{0}-\frac{a}{d} t$
$=-100+\frac{4}{1} t y=200-\frac{7}{1} t$
$x=-100+4 t \quad y=200-7 t$.
where $t$ is any integer.
For positive solution we must have
$-100+4 t>0$ and $200-7 t>0$
$-25+t>0, t<\frac{200}{7}<29$
Thus, $25<t<29$
We can now prepare table of possible solutions.

| t | x | y | z | $15 \mathrm{x}+9 \mathrm{y}+\mathrm{z}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 26 | 4 | 18 | 78 | 300 |
| 27 | 8 | 11 | 81 | 300 |
| 28 | 12 | 4 | 84 | 300. |

## Exercises 1.3

1. Determine all the solutions in the positive integers of the following Diophantine equations
a) $18 x+5 y=48$
b) $54 x+21 y=906$
c) $158 x-57 y=7$
(Ans. a) $(1,6)$ b) $(2,38),(9,20),(16,2)$ c) $(17-57 \mathrm{t}, 47-158 \mathrm{t})$ where $t \leq 0)$
2. A certain number of sixes and nines is added to give a sum of 126 ;if the number of sixes and nines is interchanged, the new sum is 114 .How many of each were there originally?
(Ans.six 6's and ten 9's)
3. When Mr. Smith cashed a cheque at his bank, the teller mistook the number of cents to the number of dollars and vice versa. Unaware of this, Mr. Smith spent 68 cents and then noticed to his surprise that he had twice the amount of the original cheque. Determine the smallest value for which the cheque could have been written.
(Ans. \$10.21)

## Unit-2

## PRIMES AND THEIR DISTRIBUTION

### 2.1 Fundamental Theorem of Arithmetic

Definition. An integer $p>1$ is a prime integer or simply a prime if it's only divisors are 1 and $p$. An integer greater than 1 that is not prime is called composite integer.

Theorem. If $p$ is a prime and $p \mid a b$ then $p \mid a$ or $p / b$.
Proof. If $p \mid a$ then there is nothing to prove.
Suppose $p / a$ then p being prime its only divisors are 1 and p , therefore $\operatorname{gcd}(p, a)=1$ or $p . \operatorname{Ifgcd}(p, a)=p$ then $p \mid a$, which is absurd.

Hence $\operatorname{gcd}(p, a)=1$. Then by Euclid's lemma $p \mid a b$ and $\operatorname{gcd}(p, a)=1$ together give us $p \mid b$.

Corollary. If $p$ is prime and $p \mid a_{1} a_{2} \ldots a_{n}$ then $p \mid a_{k}$ for some $1 \leq k \leq n$.
Proof. We shall prove this by induction on $n$.
Suppose $\mathrm{n}=2$, then $p\left|a_{1} a_{2} \Rightarrow p\right| a_{1}$ or $p \mid a_{2}$ by known result. Hence the result holds for $n=2$.

Suppose the result holds for $\mathrm{n}=\mathrm{m}$ and
Consider.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& p \mid a_{1} a_{2} \ldots a_{m} a_{m+1} \\
& \Rightarrow p \mid\left(a_{1} a_{2} \ldots a_{m}\right) a_{m+1} \\
& \Rightarrow p \mid a_{1} a_{2} \ldots a_{m} \text { or } \mathrm{p} \mid a_{m+1} \\
& \Rightarrow p \mid a_{k} \text { for some } 1 \leq k \leq m \text { or } \mathrm{p} \mid a_{m+1} \\
& \Rightarrow p \mid a_{k} \text { for some } 1 \leq k \leq m+1
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence, the result holds for $n=m+1$ whenever it holds for $n=m$.
Therefore, by principle of mathematical induction the result holds for any n .
Theorem. If $p, q_{1}, q_{2}, \ldots q_{n}$ are all primes and $p \mid q_{1} q_{2} \ldots q_{n}$ then $p=q_{k}$ for some $\mathrm{k}, 1 \leq k \leq n$

Proof. In view of the above corollary, $p \mid q_{1} q_{2} \ldots q_{n}$ implies $p \mid q_{k}$ for some $1 \leq k \leq n$ Since both $p$ and $q_{k}$ are primes and that $q_{k}>1, p>1$ we have $p=q_{k}$.

## Theorem. (Fundamental Theorem of Arithmetic)

Every positive integer $n>1$, can be expressed as product of primes, this representation is unique apart from the order in which the factors occur .

Proof. If n is prime there is nothing to prove. Suppose ' n ' is composite, then there exist an integer $\mathrm{d}>1$ such that $\mathrm{d} \mid \mathrm{n}$ with $1<\mathrm{d}<\mathrm{n}$. Thus there is a set of divisors of n such that $1<\mathrm{d}<$ n . Therefore, there is a smallest integer $p_{1}$ such that $1<p_{1}<n$ and $p_{1} \mid n$.

Claim : $p_{1}$ is prime.
Suppose on the contrary that $p_{1}$ is composite integer, then there is a divisor $q\left(1<q<p_{1}\right)$ of $p_{1}$ which is ultimately a divisor of n , which contradicts minimality of $p_{1}$. Hence $p_{1}$ is prime. Thus we have $n=p_{1} n_{1}$, where $p_{l}$ is prime and $n>n_{1}$. If $n_{1}$ is prime, we are done, otherwise there is prime $p_{2}$ dividing $n_{1}$. Let $n_{1}=p_{2} n_{2}$ with $n>n_{1}>n_{2}$. If $n_{2}$ is prime we stop here. Otherwise there is a prime $p_{3}$ and $n_{2}=p_{3} n_{3}$ with $n>n_{1}>n_{2}>n_{3}$. Since n is finite the above process can not be continued indefinitely, that is to say, there is a positive integer r such that $n_{r-1}=p_{r} q_{r}$ where $p_{r}$ and $q_{r}$ are primes.

Thus $n=p_{1} p_{2} \ldots p_{r} q_{r}$ is prime factorization of $n>1$.
Uniqueness :Let $q_{1}, q_{2}, \ldots, q_{s}$ be primes such that, $n=p_{1} p_{2} \ldots p_{r}=q_{1} q_{2} \ldots q_{s}$ where $p_{a}, \ldots p_{\mathrm{r}}$ and $q_{a}, \ldots q_{s}$ are primes written in increasing order, that is $p_{1} \leq p_{2} \leq p_{3} \leq \ldots \leq p_{r}$ and $q_{1} \leq q_{2} \leq \ldots \leq q_{s}$.

Now, $p_{1} \mid p_{1} p_{2} \ldots p_{r}=q_{1} q_{2} \ldots q_{s} \Rightarrow p_{1}=q_{k}$ for some $1 \leq k \leq s$.
By hypothesis $p_{1}=q_{k} \geq q_{1}$. Thus $p_{1} \geq q_{1}$. Now, starting with $q_{1}$ instead of $p_{1}$ we obtain $p_{1} \leq q_{1}$. Thus $p_{1}=q_{1}$. Therefore, we have $p_{2} p_{3 \ldots} . p_{r}=q_{2} q_{3} \ldots q_{s}$ Repeating the above process we obtain $\mathrm{l}=q_{r+1} \ldots q_{s}$. This is possible only if $r=s$ and $p_{k}=q_{k}$ for all $k$.

Hence the uniqueness.
Corollary. Any positive integer $\mathrm{n}>1$, can be written uniquely in the canonical form $\mathrm{n}=$ $p_{1}{ }^{k l} p_{2}{ }^{k 2} \ldots p_{r}{ }^{k r}$ where for $i=1,2, \ldots r$ each $k_{r}$ is a positive integer and each $p_{i}$ is a prime with $p_{1}<p_{2}<\ldots<p_{r}$.

Proof. Proof is immediate from the above theorem.
Theorem. The number $\sqrt{2}$ is irrational.

Proof. Suppose on the contrary that $\sqrt{2}$ is rational, then there exist integers $a, b \neq 0$ such that $\sqrt{2}=\frac{a}{b}$, where $\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)=1$. Squaring both sides, we obtain $2 b^{2}=a^{2}$.

If $b>1$, then by Fundamental theorem of arithmetic, there is a prime $p$ such that $p \mid b$. Hence, $p \mid a^{2}$, but then $p \mid a$,so that $\operatorname{gcd}(a, b) \geq p$, which is impossible. Thus we have $b=1$ so that $a^{2}=2$ and there is no integer $a$ whose square is 2 . Hence, we arrive at contradiction. Therefore $\sqrt{2}$ is irrational.

Ex. 1 Prove that any prime of the form $3 n+1$ is also of the form $6 m+1$.
Solution. For $3 n+1$ is to be odd we must have $3 n$ to be even and hence n must be even.
Ex. 2 Every integer of the form $n^{4}+4$ is composite for $n>1$.
Solution. Observe that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& n^{4}+4=n^{4}+4 n^{2}+4-4 n^{2} \\
& =\left(n^{2}+2\right)^{2}-(2 n)^{2} \\
& =\left(n^{2}+2+2 n\right)\left(n^{2}+2-2 n\right),
\end{aligned}
$$

which is composite for $\mathrm{n}>1$.
Ex. 3 The only prime of the form $n^{2}-4$ is 5
Solution. For $n=3, n^{2}-4=5$ and for $n \geq 4$, we have $n^{2}-4=(n+2)(n-2)$, which is composite.

Ex. 4 . Prove that every number of the form $3 n+2$ has a prime factor of the same form.
Proof. We know that product of any number of integers of the form $3 n+1$ is also a number of the form $3 n+1$ and that product of any number of integers of the form $3 n$ is also a number of the form 3 n . Therefore, the prime factorization of any number of the form $3 n+2$ must contain a prime of the form $3 n+2$.

Theorem(Euclid's Theorem). There is an infinite number of primes.
Proof. Let $p_{1}=2, p_{2}=3, p_{3}=5, p_{4}=7, \ldots$ be primes in natural order. If possible there be last prime $p_{n}$. That is $p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{n}$ are the only primes.

Consider

$$
P=p_{1} p_{2} \ldots p_{n}+1
$$

Clearly, $\quad P>1$ therefore, by Fundamental theorem of Arithmetic P has a prime factor $p$. which is one of $p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{n}$. Therefore $p \mid p_{1} p_{2} \ldots \ldots p_{n}$. Further $p \mid P$

Thus $p \mid P-p_{1} p_{2} \ldots \ldots p_{n}=1$. Therefore, $p \mid 1$ which is absurd.
Hence, the infinitude of primes.
Note. Let $p^{\#}$ denote the product of primes less than or equal to p , where $p$ is prime.
Consider $p^{\#}+1$
This number is called 'Euclid's number' or 'Euclidean number'
Consider,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 3=2^{\#}+1=2+1 \\
& 7=3^{\#}+1=2 \cdot 3+1 \\
& 31=5^{\#}+1=2 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdot+1 \\
& 211=7^{\#}+1=2 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdot 7+1 \\
& 2311=11^{\#}+1=2 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdot 7 \cdot 11+1
\end{aligned}
$$

All numbers of the form $p^{\#}+1$ need not be prime.
Let $n_{1}=2$
$n_{2}=n_{1}+1$
$n_{3}=n_{2} \cdot n_{1}+1$
$n_{4}=n_{3} \cdot n_{2} \cdot n_{1}+1$
$n_{\mathrm{k}}=\mathrm{n}_{k-1} n_{k-2} \ldots n_{l}+1$

Since each $n_{k}>1$, each $n_{k}$ has a prime divisor. Interestingly no two $n_{k}$ 's have same prime divisor.

Let,
$d=\operatorname{gcd}\left(n_{i}, n_{k}\right)$ where $i<k$.
Suppose $d \mid n_{i}$ then as $i<k, d \mid n_{1} n_{2} n_{3} \ldots n_{k-l}$

Further $d\left|n_{k} \Rightarrow d\right| n_{k}-n_{1} \cdot n_{2} \ldots . n_{k-1}=1$
Thus $d=1$
Hence $\operatorname{gcd}\left(n_{i}, n_{k}\right)=1$.
Thus, there are atleast as many different prime as different $\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{k}}$ 's. Therefore primes are infinite in number.

Now, let us come back to primes $p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{n} \ldots$ in natural order. Consider $P=p_{1} p_{2} \ldots p_{n-1}+1$.

Then prime divisor $p$ of P is none of $p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{n-1}$.Therefore $p_{n} \leq \mathrm{p}$.
In other words, if there are several such primes p dividing P then $p_{n}$ can not exceed the smallest of these. That is $p_{n} \leq p_{1} p_{2} \ldots p_{n-1}+1(n \geq 2)$

With slight modification, we can write
$p_{n} \leq p_{1} p_{2} \ldots p_{n-1}-1(n \geq 3)$.
Theorem. If $p_{n}$ is the $\mathrm{n}^{\text {th }}$ prime number then $p_{n} \leq 2^{2^{n-1}}$.
Proof. We shall prove this theorem by induction on $n$. For $n=1, p_{1}=2$ and $2^{2^{n-1}}=2$. Thus the results holds. Let the result hold true for all integers $<\mathrm{n}$.

We know, $\quad p_{n} \leq p_{1} p_{2} \ldots p_{n-1}+1$
$\leq 2 \cdot 2^{2} \cdot 2^{2^{2}} \cdot \ldots \cdot 2^{2^{n-2}}+1$
$=2^{1+2+2^{2}+\ldots+2^{n-2}}+1$
$=2^{2^{n-1}-1}+1$
$\leq 2^{2^{n-1}-1}+2^{2^{n-1}-1}$
$=2^{2^{n-1}}$
Thus $p_{n} \leq 2^{2^{n-1}}$.
Hence, the result holds true for n . Therefore, by principle of induction the result holds for any n.

From this theorem following result follows immediately.

Corollary .There are at least $\mathrm{n}+1$ primes less than $2^{2^{n \prime}}$.
Proof. From the above theorem $p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{n}$ are primes less than $2^{2^{2}}$.

## Exercises 2.1

1. Exhibit five primes of the form $n^{2}-2$.
2. Prove that the only prime of the form $n^{3}-1$ is 7 .
3. Find four primes of the form $2^{n}-1$.
4. Find prime factorizations of the integers 1234 and 10140.
5. If $n>1$ is an integer not of the form $6 k+1$, prove that either 2 or 3 divides $n^{2}+2^{n}$.
6. Prove that any integer of the form $8^{k}+1$, where $n \geq 1$, is composite.
7. Find all primes that divide 50 !
8. If $p \geq 5$ is a prime number, show that $p^{2}+2$ is composite.

### 2.2 SIEVE OF ERATOSTHENES

Let $a>1$ be a composite number then there exist integers $b, c(1<b<a ; 1<c<a)$ such that $a=b c$. Assuming $b \leq c$, we have $b^{2} \leq b c=a$ and hence $b<\sqrt{a}$. Since $b>1, b$ has a prime factor $p$. If $p$ is prime divisor of $b>1$, then $p|b \Rightarrow p| a$ and that $p \leq b<\sqrt{a}$. Thus a composite number $a$ always posseses a prime divisor $p \leq \sqrt{a}$.

Therefore to find a prime factors of any integer $a>1$. It is enough to test the primes less than $\sqrt{a}$. More precisely the number 100 has a prime factor which is one amongst $2,3,5$, 7. Infact $100=2^{2} \cdot 5^{2}$.

Let us consider the number $a=2093$. Here the smallest prime dividing $a$ is 7 and so 2093 $=7 \times 299$. Further smallest divisor of 299 is 13 , thus $299=13 \times 23$. Thus $a=7 \times 13 \times 23$.

Let us consider the application of sieve of Eratothenes to obtain all the primes less than 100.


[^1]

Begin with 2 and score off all the multiples of 2 higher than 2 higher than 2 . Then take 3 and score off all multiples of 3 other than 3 . Repeated it for 5, 7 and the integers that survise scoring off are the primes less than 100 .

Primes less than 100 are,

$$
2,3,5,7,11,13,17,19,23,29,31,37,41,43,47,53,59,61,67,71,73,79,83,89,97
$$

## Exercises 2.2

1. Determine whether the integer 501 is prime by testing all primes $p \leq \sqrt{501}$ as possible divisors.
2. Apply sieve of Eratosthenes to obtain all primes between 200 and 300 .
3. Show that any composite three digit number must have a prime factor less than or equal to 31 . What can be said about four digit number?

### 2.4 Goldbach Conjecture

The difference between consecutive primes could be small as with the pairs 11, 13 and 17, 19 and for that matter $1,000,000,000,061$ and $1,000,000,000,063$. We call such pairs as twin primes i. e. pair of primes of the form p and $\mathrm{p}+2$. The electronic computers have discovered 152892 twin primes $<3,000,000,0$ and 20 pairs between $10^{12}$ and $10^{12}+10000$.

The largest twin prime pair known is $3756801695685 \cdot 2^{666669} \pm 1$ (as of January 2016)

Proposition. Given any positive integer n , there exist n consecutive integers, all of which are composite.

Proof. Given an integer $\mathrm{n}, \mathrm{n}$ - consecutive composite integers are
$(n+1)!+2,(n+1)!+3, \ldots,(n+1)!+(n+1)$.
e.g. $\quad 5!+2=2 \times 61$
$5!+3=3 \times 41$
$5!+4=4 \times 31$
$5!+5=5 \times 25$.

Goldbach Conjecture: Every even integer greater than 4 can be written as sum of two odd primes.

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\text { e.g. } & 6=3+3 \\
& 8=5+3 \\
10=5+5=3+7 \\
12=5+7 \\
14=11+3=7+7 \\
16=3+13=5+11 \\
18=7+11=5+13 \\
& 20=7+13=3+17 \quad \ldots
\end{array}
$$

Though this appears to be simple no proof has been found till todate. It is still an open problem.

It has been verified by computation for all even integers less than $4 \times 10^{11}$, G.H. Hardy in his address to the mathematical society of Copenhagen in 1921 stated that the Goldbach conjecture appeared. "...Probably as difficult as any of the unsolved problems in mathematics". It is currently known that every even integer is the sum of 6 or fewer primes.

Lemma. The product of two or more integers of the form $4 n+1$ is in the same form
Proof. Let $4 m+1$ and $4 n+1$ be two integers then
$(4 m+1)(4 n+1)=16 m n+4(m+n)+1=4(4 m n+m+n)+1$.
which is of the form $4 n+1$.
Theorem. There is an infinite number of primes of the form $4 n+3$
Proof. Suppose that there are only a finite number of primes of the form $4 n+3$, namely $p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{r}$.

Consider, $\quad N=4 p_{1} p_{2} \ldots p_{r}-1=4\left(p_{1} p_{2} \ldots \ldots p_{r}-1\right)+3$.
Clearly, $\mathrm{N}>1$ and is of the form $4 n+3$
Since $\mathrm{N}>1$, it has prime factorization $N=q_{1} q_{2} \ldots \ldots q_{s}$. Further N being odd number $q_{k} \neq 2(1 \leq k \leq s)$. If some $q_{k}$ divides $4 p_{1} p_{2} \ldots \ldots p_{r}$ then as $q_{k} \mid N$
$q_{k}\left|4 p_{1} p_{2} \ldots p_{r}-N=1 \Rightarrow q_{k}\right| 1 \Rightarrow q_{k}=1$ which is absurd. Thus $q_{k}$ is other than $p_{1}, \ldots, p_{r}$ for $\leq k \leq s$

Further, each $q_{k}(1 \leq k \leq s)$, being odd it is of the form $4 n+1$ or $4 n+3$. Since N is of the form $4 n+3$, all $q_{k}$ 's can not be of the form $4 n+1$ because product of finite number of integers of the term $4 n+1$ is of the same form. Therefore, there is atleast one $q_{k}$ of the form
$4 n+3$. Thus $q_{k}$ is a prime of the form $4 n+3$ other than $p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{r}$. Thus we arrive at contradiction.

Therefore there are infinitely many primes of the form $4 n+3$.

Theorem. If all the $n>2$ terms of the arithmetic progression $p, p+2 d, \ldots, p+(n-1) d$ are prime numbers then the common difference d is divisible by every prime $\mathrm{q}<\mathrm{n}$.

Proof. Let q be a prime less than n . Let if possible $q \backslash d$.
Claim. The first q terms of the progression namely, $p, p+d, \ldots, p+(q-1) d$ will leave different remainders upon division by q .

Suppose on the contrary that $p+r d$ and $p+s d(0 \leq r<s<q)$ leave the same remainder upon division by q. Then $p+r d=q_{1} q+r$ and $p+s d=q_{2} q+r$, where $q_{1}$ and $q_{2}$ are quotients. Therefore, $(s-r) d=\left(q_{2}-q_{1}\right) q$. Thus $q \mid(s-r) d$.Since ' $q$ ' is prime and $q \nmid d, \operatorname{gcd}(q, d)=1$ .Hence by Euclid's lemma, $q \|(s-r)$ which is absurd as $0 \leq r \leq s \leq q$.

Hence, the claim.
Since the q integers $p, p+d, p+2 d, \ldots . p+(q-1) d$ leave different remainders upon division by q , one of the above q numbers will leave remainder 0 . Note that the q remainders upon division by q are $0,1,2, \ldots, \mathrm{q}-1$. Let $0 \leq t<q$ be such that $q \mid p+t d$. Note that if $\mathrm{p}<$ n , then one of the members of the progression $\mathrm{p}, \mathrm{p}+\mathrm{d}, \ldots, \mathrm{p}+(\mathrm{n}-1) \mathrm{d}$ is of the form $\mathrm{p}+\mathrm{pd}$ $=\mathrm{p}(1+\mathrm{d})$, contradicting the fact that all members of the progression are primes. Therefore, we have $q<n \leq p \leq p+t d$.

Thus, we arrive at the conclusion that $p+t d$ is composite, which is absurd. Therefore, $q \mid d$.
(e.g. $p=5, n=7, d=4$, one of $1,2, \ldots$, (7-1) is $p=5$ and one of $p, p+d$, $p+2 d, \ldots p+(n-1) d$ namely $5,5+4,5+2 \times 4,5+3 \times 4,5+4 \times 4,5+5 \times 4,5+6 \times 4$ is $5+5 \times 4$ that is $p+p d$ form. And also $n=3, p=3, d=4, q=2<3=n$, consider $3,3+4$ $=7,3+2 \times 4=11$ are all primes. Here $q=2$ divides $d=4$.)

## Unit - III

## CONGRUENCES

### 3.1 Properties of Congruences:

Definition. Let $n$ be a positive integer, then two integers $a$ and b are said to be congruent modulo $n$ written as $a \equiv b(\bmod n)$ if and only if $n \mid a-b$, that is, $a-b=k n$, for some integer $k$.

Let us take $n=9$, then
$25 \equiv 7(\bmod 9), \quad-23 \equiv 4(\bmod 9), \quad 39 \equiv-6(\bmod 9), \quad-41 \equiv-5(\bmod 9)$, because $25-7=2(9), 23-(-4)=3(9), 36-(-9)=5(9),-41-(-5)=-4(9)$.

Note. Congruence relation is an equivalence relation.
Let $a$ and $n$ be a given integers, then there exist integers $q$ and $r$, such that $a=q n+r, 0 \leq r<n$. Observe that in this case $a \equiv r(\bmod n)$. Thus every integer is congruent modulo $n$ to one of the integers $0,1,2, \ldots, n-1$. In particular, $a \equiv 0(\bmod n)$ if and only if $n \mid a$. The set of integers $0,1,2, \ldots, n-1$ is called the set of least nonnegative residues modulo $n$. Moreover, the set of integers $a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{n}$ is said to be complete set(system) of residues modulo $n$, if every integer is congruent modulo $n$ to one and only one of $a_{k}$. In other words, $a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{n}$ is congruent modulo $n$ to $0,1,2, \ldots, n-1$, taken in some order. For example, $-14,-16,15,23,31,41,45$ is complete set(system) of residues modulo 7; Here, we have

$$
-14 \equiv 0,-16 \equiv 5,15 \equiv 1,23 \equiv 2,31 \equiv 3,41 \equiv 6,46 \equiv 4
$$

Theorem. For arbitrary integers $a$ and $\mathrm{b}, a \equiv b(\bmod n)$ if and if only $a$ and b leave the same remainder upon division by n .

Proof. Suppose $a \equiv b(\bmod n)$, then $a=b+q n$ for some integer q. By division algorithm there exist integers $q_{1}$ and $r$ such that $a=n q_{1}+r, 0 \leq r<n$, then $a=b+q n$ gives us
$n q_{1}+r=b+q n$
$\Rightarrow b=\left(q_{1}-q\right) n+r$.
Thus $a$ and $b$ leave the same remainder upon division by $n$.
Conversely, suppose that $a$ and b leave the same remainder on division by n , then $a=q_{1} n+r$ and $b=q_{2} n+r$ where $q_{1}, q_{2}$ are quotients and $r$ is remainder on division by $n$.

Thus, $a-b=\left(q_{1}-q_{2}\right) n \Rightarrow a \equiv b(\bmod n)$.

Theorem. Let $n>0$ be fixed and $\mathrm{a}, \mathrm{b}, \mathrm{c}$, d be arbitrary integers. Then the following properties hold
a) $a \equiv a(\bmod n)$.
b) If $a \equiv b(\bmod n)$ then $b \equiv a(\bmod n)$.
c) If $a \equiv b(\bmod n)$ and $b \equiv c(\bmod n)$ then $a \equiv c(\bmod n)$.
d) If $a \equiv b(\bmod n)$ and $c \equiv d(\bmod n)$ then $a+c \equiv b+d(\bmod n)$ and $a c \equiv b d(\bmod n)$.
e) If $a \equiv b(\bmod n)$, then $a+c \equiv b+c(\bmod n)$ and $a c \equiv b c(\bmod n)$.
f) If $a \equiv b(\bmod n)$, then $a^{k} \equiv b^{k}(\bmod n)$ for any positive integer k .

Proof. a) $a \equiv a(\bmod n)$
Since $(a-a)=0=0 . n$ for any integer $a$
$\Rightarrow n \mid(a-a)$
$\Rightarrow a \equiv a(\bmod n)$
b) $a \equiv b(\bmod n)$
$\Rightarrow n \mid(a-b)$
$\Rightarrow a-b=k . n$ for some k
$\Rightarrow b-a=(-k) n$
$\Rightarrow n \mid(b-a)$
$\Rightarrow b=a(\bmod n)$.
c) Let $a \equiv b(\bmod n)$ and $b \equiv c(\bmod n)$ then $a \equiv c(\bmod n)$
$\Rightarrow n \mid(a-b)$ and $n \mid(b-c)$
$\Rightarrow n \mid(a-b)+(b-c)$
$\Rightarrow n \mid(a-c)$
$\Rightarrow a=c(\bmod n)$.
Thus if $a \equiv b(\bmod n)$ and $a \equiv c(\bmod n)$ then $a \equiv c(\bmod n)$
d) Suppose $a \equiv b(\bmod n)$ and $c \equiv d(\bmod n)$
$\Rightarrow n \mid(a-b)$ and $n \mid(c-d)$
$\Rightarrow a-b=n r$ and $c-d=n s$ for some integers $\mathrm{r}, \mathrm{s}$
Now,
$(a+c)-(b+d)=(a-b)+(c-d)$
$=n r+n s$
$=n(r+s)$.
Therefore, $n \mid(a+c)-(b+d)$
$\Rightarrow(a+c) \equiv(b+d)(\bmod n)$
$a+c \equiv b+d(\bmod n)$.
Now, $a c-b d=a c-b c+b c-b d=(a-b) c+(c-d) b=n r c+b n s$
$\Rightarrow a c-b d=n(r c+b s)$
$\Rightarrow n \mid a c-b d \Rightarrow a c \equiv b d(\bmod n)$
e) Suppose $a \equiv b(\bmod n)$ but $c \equiv c(\bmod n)$ always holds. Thus
$a+c \equiv b+c(\bmod n)$.and also $\mathrm{ac} \equiv \mathrm{bc}(\operatorname{modn})$
Also, $a \equiv b(\bmod n)$ but $c \equiv c(\bmod n)$ always holds.
Then by (iv) we have
$a c \equiv b c(\bmod n)$.
f) Suppose $a \equiv b(\bmod n) \Rightarrow n \mid(a-b)$.

We know that if k is positive integer then

$$
a^{k}-b^{k}=(a-b)\left(a^{k-1}+a^{k-2} b+\ldots .+b^{k-1}\right)
$$

Since, $n \mid a-b$, we have
$n \mid(a-b)\left(a^{k-1}+a^{k-2} b+\ldots .+b^{k-1}\right)=a^{k}-b^{k}$
Therefore, $n \mid a^{k}-b^{k} \Rightarrow a^{k} \equiv b^{k}(\bmod n)$.
Ex. 1 Show that $41 \mid 2^{20}-1$.
Solution. To prove this, it is enough to show that $2^{20} \equiv 1(\bmod 41)$.
We know that $2^{7} \equiv 5(\bmod 41) \Rightarrow 2^{14} \equiv 25(\bmod 41)$.
And $2^{6} \equiv 23(\bmod 41)$.
Thus,

$$
2^{20}=2^{14} 2^{6} \equiv 25.23(\bmod 41) \Rightarrow 2^{20} \equiv 1(\bmod 41) .
$$

Ex.2. Find last two digits of the number $9^{9^{9}}$.
Solution. We know $9 \equiv-1(\bmod 10)$, therefore $9^{9} \equiv(-1)^{9} \equiv-1 \equiv 9(\bmod 10)$.
Next, $9^{2}=81 \equiv-19(\bmod 100) \Rightarrow 9^{4} \equiv 361 \equiv-39(\bmod 100) \Rightarrow 9^{8} \equiv 21(\bmod 100)$.
Further, $9^{9} \equiv 89(\bmod 100)$ and $9^{10} \equiv 1(\bmod 100)$.
Thus $9^{9^{9}}=9^{9+10 k}=9^{9} \cdot 9^{10 k} \equiv 89 \cdot 1(\bmod 100)$.
Therefore, 89 are the last two digits.
Ex. 3 Find the remainder obtained upon dividing, $1!+2!+3!+\ldots+100$ ! by 12 .
Solution. Since each of $4!, 5!, \ldots, 100$ ! contain $4!=1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 4=24,4!+\ldots+100$ ! is divisible by 12 the remainder is $1!+2!+3!=1+2+6=9$.

Theorem. If $c a \equiv c b(\bmod n)$ then $a \equiv b\left(\bmod \frac{n}{d}\right)$ where $d=\operatorname{gcd}(c, n)$
Proof. Given $d=\operatorname{gcd}(c, n)$ then $\mathrm{d} \mid \mathrm{c}$ and $\mathrm{d} \mid \mathrm{n}$, therefore $\frac{n}{d}$ is an integer.
Consider, $c a \equiv c b(\bmod n)$, then $c(a-b)=n k$ for some integer k .
Now as $\mathrm{d} \mid \mathrm{c}$ and $\mathrm{d} \mid \mathrm{n}$, there exist integer $r$ and $s$ such that $\operatorname{gcd}(r, s)=1$ and $d r=c$ and $d s=n$
Thus $d r(a-b)=d s k \Rightarrow r(a-b)=s k$.
Since, r and s are relatively prime
$r(a-b)=s k \Rightarrow s \mid(a-b)$
$\Rightarrow a \equiv b(\bmod s)$
$\Rightarrow a \equiv b\left(\bmod \frac{n}{d}\right)$.
Hence the result.
Corollary. If $c a \equiv c b(\bmod n)$ and $\operatorname{gcd}(c, n)=1$ then $a \equiv b(\bmod n)$
Corollary. If $c a \equiv c b(\bmod p)$ and $p \nmid c$, where $p$ is a prime number, then $a \equiv b(\bmod p)$.
Proof. Since $p$ is a prime $\operatorname{gcd}(c, p)=p$ or 1 . However as $p \nmid c, \operatorname{gcd}(c, p)=1$ and the result follows.

Ex. 4 Prove each of the following
a) If $a \equiv b(\bmod n)$ and $m \mid n$ then $a \equiv b(\bmod m)$
b) If $a \equiv b(\bmod n)$ and $c>0$ then $c a \equiv c b(\bmod c n)$
c) If $a \equiv b(\bmod n)$ and the integers $a, b, n$ are divisible by $d>0$ then $\frac{a}{d} \equiv \frac{b}{d}\left(\bmod \frac{n}{d}\right)$.

Solution. a) Suppose $a \equiv b(\bmod n)$, then there is an integer $k$ such that $a=b+k n$, since $m \mid n$ there is an integer $t$ such that $n=m t$. Thus $a=b+k t m=b+(k t) m$ and hence, $a \equiv b(\bmod m)$.
b) Suppose $a \equiv b(\bmod n)$, then there is an integer $k$ such that $a=b+k n$. Thus we have for $c>0 c a=c b+c k n=c b+k(c n)$. Therefore, $c a \equiv c b(\bmod c n)$.
c) Suppose $a \equiv b(\bmod n)$, then there is an integer $k$ such that $a=b+k n$ so that $\frac{a}{d}=\frac{b}{d}+k \frac{n}{d}$, for any $d>0$. Since each of the integers $a, b, n$ are divisible by $d>0$, each of the numbers $\frac{a}{d}, \frac{b}{d}, \frac{n}{d}$ are integers so $\frac{a}{d} \equiv \frac{b}{d}\left(\bmod \frac{n}{d}\right)$.

Ex. 4. Give an example to show that $a^{2} \equiv b^{2}(\bmod n)$ need not imply $a \equiv b(\bmod n)$
Solution. $5^{2} \equiv 4^{2}(\bmod 9)$ but $4 \equiv 5(\bmod 9)$
Ex.5. If $a \equiv b(\bmod n)$ prove that $\operatorname{gcd}(a, n) \equiv \operatorname{gcd}(b, n)$.
Solution. Suppose $a \equiv b(\bmod n)$, then there exist positive integer $k$ such that $a=b+k n$. Let $d=\operatorname{gcd}(a, n), d^{\prime}=\operatorname{gcd}(b, n)$. Since $d=\operatorname{gcd}(a, n)$, we have $d \mid a$ and $d \mid n$, so that $d|a, d| k n \Rightarrow d \mid a-k n=b$. Thus $d \mid b$ and $d \mid n$. Therefore, $d \leq d^{\prime}$. Further, $d^{\prime}=\operatorname{gcd}(b, n)$,
we have $d^{\prime} \mid b$ and $d^{\prime} \mid n$, so that $d^{\prime}\left|b, d^{\prime}\right| k n \Rightarrow d^{\prime} \mid b+k n=a$. Thus $d^{\prime} \mid a$ and $d^{\prime} \mid n$. Therefore, $d^{\prime} \leq d$.Thus $d=d^{\prime}$.

Ex.6. Find the remainder when $2^{50}$ is divided by 7 .
Solution.We know,
$2^{3} \equiv 1(\bmod 7)$
$\Rightarrow 2^{48}=\left(2^{3}\right)^{16} \equiv 1^{16}(\bmod 7)$
$\Rightarrow 2^{48} \equiv 1(\bmod 7)$
$\Rightarrow 2^{50}=2^{48+2}=2^{48} 2^{2} \equiv 1 \cdot 4 \equiv 4(\bmod 7)$.
Thus $2^{50} \equiv 4(\bmod 7)$, that is, remainder when $2^{50}$ is divided by 7 is 4 .
Ex. 7 Find the remainder when $4444^{4444}$ is divided by 9 .
Solution. Note that $1111=123 \times 9+4$, so that $1111 \equiv 4(\bmod 9)$.
Then $4444 \equiv 16(\bmod 9) \Rightarrow 4444 \equiv-2(\bmod 9)$. Therefore $4444^{4444} \equiv(-2)^{4444}(\bmod 9)$ or $4444^{4444} \equiv 2^{4444}(\bmod 9)$. Now $2^{3} \equiv-1(\bmod 9)$ implies $2^{9} \equiv-1(\bmod 9)$.

Thus $2^{1111}=2^{123 \times 9+4}=\left(2^{9}\right)^{123} \times 2^{4} \equiv(-1)^{123} \times 16 \equiv(-1) \times 7 \equiv-7 \equiv 2(\bmod 9)$.
Hence, $2^{4444}=\left(2^{1111}\right)^{4} \equiv 2^{4} \equiv 7(\bmod 9)$.
Thus $4444^{4444} \equiv 2^{4444} \equiv 7(\bmod 9)$. Therefore, the remainder is 7 .
Ex.8. What is the remainder when the following sum is divided by 4 ?

$$
1^{5}+2^{5}+3^{5}+\cdots+100^{5} .
$$

Solution. Observe that each of $2^{5}, 4^{5}, 6^{5}, \ldots, 100^{5}$ is divisible by 4 . Now what remains to be examined is the sum $1^{5}+3^{5}+5^{5}+\cdots+99^{5}$ which contains 50 terms. This can be rearranged in 25 pairs as follows.

$$
\left(1^{5}+3^{5}\right)+\left(5^{5}+7^{5}\right)+\cdots+\left(97^{5}+99^{5}\right) .
$$

Here each pair is of the form,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& (2 n-1)^{5}+(2 n+1)^{5}=(2 n-1+2 n+1)\left[(2 n-1)^{4}+(2 n-1)^{3}(2 n+1)+\cdots+(2 n-1)(2 n+1)^{3}+(2 n+1)^{4}\right] \\
& =(4 n)\left[(2 n-1)^{4}+(2 n-1)^{3}(2 n+1)+\cdots+(2 n-1)(2 n+1)^{3}+(2 n+1)^{4}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus whole sum is divisible 4 and hence the remainder is zero.

### 3.2 SPECIAL DIVISIBILITY TESTS

In this section we will see a mathematical formulation of divisibility tests.
Theorem. Given an integer $b>1$, any positive integer $N$ can be written uniquely in terms of powers of $b$ as $N=a_{m} b^{m}+a_{m-1} b^{m-1}+a_{m-2} b^{m-2}+\cdots+a_{1} b+a_{0}$ where the coefficients $a_{k}$ can take on $b$ different values $0,1,2, \ldots, b-1$.

Proof. By division algorithm there exist integers $q_{1}$ and $a_{0}$ such that

$$
N=q_{1} b+a_{0}, 0 \leq a_{0}<b .
$$

If $q_{1} \geq b$, we can divide once more and write

$$
q_{1}=q_{2} b+a_{1}, 0 \leq a_{1}<b .
$$

Substituting for $q_{1}$, we obtain

$$
N=\left(q_{2} b+a_{1}\right) b+a_{0}=q_{2} b^{2}+a_{1} b+a_{0}, 0 \leq a_{1}, a_{0}<b .
$$

Further, if $q_{2} \geq b$, we can proceed to get

$$
N=q_{3} b^{3}+a_{2} b^{2}+a_{1} b+a_{0}, 0 \leq a_{2}, a_{1}, a_{0}<b .
$$

Since, $N>q_{1}>q_{2}>\cdots \geq 0$ is strictly decreasing sequences, this process should terminate in finite number of steps to give us

$$
N=a_{m} b^{m}+a_{m-1} b^{m-1}+a_{m-2} b^{m-2}+\cdots+a_{1} b+a_{0},
$$

where the coefficients $a_{k}$ can take on $b$ different values $0,1,2, \ldots, b-1$.

## Uniqueness:

Suppose that, $N$ has two distinct representations as follows

$$
N=a_{m} b^{m}+a_{m-1} b^{m-1}+a_{m-2} b^{m-2}+\cdots+a_{1} b+a_{0}=c_{m} b^{m}+c_{m-1} b^{m-1}+c_{m-2} b^{m-2}+\cdots+c_{1} b+c_{0}
$$

where, $0 \leq a_{i}<b$ for each $i$ and $0 \leq c_{j}<b$ for each $j$. This can be written as

$$
0=d_{m} b^{m}+d_{m-1} b^{m-1}+\cdots+d_{1} b+d_{0}
$$

where $d_{k}=a_{k}-c_{k}$. Since the two representations are different there exist $d_{i} \neq 0$ for some $i$
. Let $k$ be the smallest subscript for which $d_{k} \neq 0$. Then

$$
0=d_{m} b^{m}+d_{m-1} b^{m-1}+\cdots+d_{k+1} b^{k+1}+d_{k} b^{k}
$$

This gives us

$$
d_{k}=-b\left(d_{m} b^{m-k-1}+\cdots+d_{k-1}\right) .
$$

Thus we have $b \mid d_{k}$. The inequalities $0 \leq a_{k}<b$ and $0 \leq c_{k}<b$ give us $-b \leq a_{k}-c_{k}<b$ or $\left|d_{k}\right|<b$. Therefore, $b$ cannot divide $d_{k}$. Hence, we must have $d_{k}=0$, for all k . Thus $a_{k}=c_{k}$ for all $k$. Therefore, the representation is unique.

Theorem. Let $P(x)=\sum_{k=0}^{m} c_{k} x^{k}$ be a polynomial function of $x$ with integral coefficients $c_{k}$. If $a \equiv b(\bmod n)$, then $P(a) \equiv P(b)(\bmod n)$.

Proof. Observe that $a \equiv b(\bmod n)$ implies $a^{k} \equiv b^{k}(\bmod n)$ for $k=1,2, \ldots, m$. Hence, $c_{k} a^{k} \equiv c_{k} b^{k}(\bmod n)$ for $k=1,2, \ldots, m$. Therefore, we have

$$
\sum_{k=0}^{m} c_{k} a^{k} \equiv \sum_{k=0}^{m} c_{k} b^{k}(\bmod n)
$$

That is $P(a) \equiv P(b)(\bmod n)$.
Corollary. If $a$ is a solution of $P(x) \equiv 0(\bmod n)$ and $a \equiv b(\bmod n)$, then $b$ is also a solution.
Proof.Since $a \equiv b(\bmod n)$, we have $P(a) \equiv P(b)(\bmod n)$. Further, $a$ is a solution of $P(x) \equiv 0(\bmod n)$, we have $P(a) \equiv 0(\bmod n)$, therefore, $P(b) \equiv 0(\bmod n)$. Thus $b$ is also a solution of $P(x) \equiv 0(\bmod n)$.
This result can be used to develop tests of divisibility. Let us begin with test of divisibility by 9 , in decimal system.

Theorem.Let $N=a_{m} 10^{m}+a_{m-1} 10^{m-1}+a_{m-2} 10^{m-2}+\cdots+a_{1} 10+a_{0}$ be the decimal expansion of the positive integer $N, 0 \leq a_{k}<10$, and let $S=a_{0}+a_{1}+\cdots+a_{m}$. Then $9 \mid N$ if and only if $9 \mid S$.

Proof. We know that $10 \equiv 1(\bmod 9)$. Let $P(x)=a_{m} x^{m}+a_{m-1} x^{m-1}+\cdots+a_{1} x+a_{0}$. Then in view of above theorem $P(10) \equiv P(1)(\bmod 9)$. Clearly,

$$
P(10)=a_{m} 10^{m}+a_{m-1} 10^{m-1}+a_{m-2} 10^{m-2}+\cdots+a_{1} 10+a_{0}=N
$$

and
$P(1)=a_{0}+a_{1}+\cdots+a_{m}=S$.
Thus $N \equiv S(\bmod 9)$. Therefore, $9 \mid N$ if and only if $9 \mid S$.
In view of this result, we have an integer N is divisible by 9 if and only if sum of digits in N is divisible by 9 .

Let us now proceed to divisibility by 11.

Theorem.Let $\quad N=a_{m} 10^{m}+a_{m-1} 10^{m-1}+a_{m-2} 10^{m-2}+\cdots+a_{1} 10+a_{0}$ be the decimal expansion of the positive integer $N, 0 \leq a_{k}<10$, and let $T=a_{0}-a_{1}+a_{2}-\cdots+(-1)^{m} a_{m}$. Then $11 \mid N$ if and only if $11 \mid T$.

Proof. We know that $10 \equiv-1(\bmod 11)$. Let $P(x)=a_{m} x^{m}+a_{m-1} x^{m-1}+\cdots+a_{1} x+a_{0}$. Then in view of above theorem $P(10) \equiv P(-1)(\bmod 11)$. Clearly,
$P(10)=a_{m} 10^{m}+a_{m-1} 10^{m-1}+a_{m-2} 10^{m-2}+\cdots+a_{1} 10+a_{0}=N$
and

$$
P(-1)=a_{0}-a_{1}+\cdots+(-1)^{m} a_{m}=T .
$$

Thus $N \equiv T(\bmod 11)$. Therefore, $11 \mid N$ if and only if $11 \mid T$.
In view of this result, we have an integer $N=a_{m} 10^{m}+a_{m-1} 10^{m-1}+a_{m-2} 10^{m-2}+\cdots+a_{1} 10+a_{0}$ is divisible by 11 if and only if $T=a_{0}-a_{1}+a_{2}-\cdots+(-1)^{m} a_{m}$ is divisible by 11 .

Ex. 9 Without performing the divisions, determine whether the integers 176,521,221 and $149,235,678$ are divisible by 9 or 11 ?

Solution. a) Consider the integer 176,521,221. Observe that
i) $1+7+6+5+2+1+2+2+1=27$, which is divisible by 9 . Therefore, $176,521,221$ is divisible by 9 .
ii) $1-7+6-5+2-1+2-2+1=-3$, which is not divisible by 11 . Therefore, $176,521,221$ is not divisible by 11 .
b) Consider the integer $149,235,678$. Observe that
i) $1+4+9+2+3+5+6+7+8=45$, which is divisible by 9 . Therefore, $149,235,678$ is divisible by 9 .
ii) $1-4+9-2+3-5+6-7+8=11$, which is divisible by 11 . Therefore, $149,235,678$ is divisible by 11 .

Looking at the above results regarding divisibility, students are advised to develop divisibility tests for other integers in decimal as well as other systems also. For example, $10 \equiv 1(\bmod 3)$ gives us divisibility test for divisibility by 3 in decimal system where as $9 \equiv 0(\bmod 3)$ gives us divisibility test for divisibility by 3 in the system to the base 9 and $9 \equiv 1(\bmod 8)$ gives us divisibility test for divisibility by 8 in the system to the base 9 . Let $P(x)=a_{m} x^{m}+a_{m-1} x^{m-1}+\cdots+a_{1} x+a_{0}$. Let $N=a_{m} 9^{m}+a_{m-1} 9^{m-1}+a_{m-2} 9^{m-2}+\cdots+a_{1} 9+a_{0}$ where $0 \leq a_{k}<9$ be a number to the base 9 . Then $9 \equiv 0(\bmod 3)$ implies $P(9) \equiv P(0)(\bmod 3) \Rightarrow N \equiv a_{0}(\bmod 3)$. Therefore, $3 \mid N$ if and only if $3 \mid a_{0}$. Similarly, we can prove that $8 \mid N$ if and only if $8 \mid a_{0}+a_{1}+\cdots+a_{m}$.

Ex. 10 Test whether the integer (447836) ${ }_{9}$ is divisible by 3 and 8 ?
Solution. Consider (447836) ${ }_{9}$. Here $a_{0}=6$ and is divisible by 3. Therefore, (447836), is divisible by 3 . Now consider $4+4+7+8+3+6=32$ which is divisible by 8 . Hence, $(447836)_{9}$ is divisible by 8 .

## Exercises 3.1

1. Prove that the integer $53^{103}+103^{53}$ is divisible by 39 .
2. Use theory of congruence to verify that $89 \mid 2^{44}-1$ and $97 \mid 2^{48}-1$.
3. For any integer $a$, prove that $a^{4} \equiv 0(\bmod 5)$ or $a^{4} \equiv 1(\bmod 5)$.
4. Working with modulo 9 or 11 m find the missing digit in the calculation below
a) $51840 \times 273581=1418243 \times 040$
b) $2 x 99561=[3(523+x)]^{2}$
(Ans. a) 9, b) 4)

### 3.3. Linear congruences:

Definition. An equation of the form $a x \equiv b(\bmod n)$ is called linear congruence.
An integer $x_{0}$ is a solution of $a x \equiv b(\bmod n)$ if $a x_{0} \equiv b(\bmod n)$.
We begin with
Theorem. The linear congruence $a x \equiv b(\bmod n)$ has a solution if and only if $d \mid b$, where $d=\operatorname{gcd}(a, n)$. If $d \mid b$, then it has $d$ mutually incongruent solutions modulo $n$.

Proof. Observe that $a x \equiv b(\bmod n)$ is equivalent to linear Diophantine equation $a x-n y=b$. We know that $a x-n y=b$ has a solution if and only if $d \mid b$. Moreover if it has a solution $x_{0}, y_{0}$ then any other solution has the form $x=x_{0}+\frac{n}{d} t, y=y_{0}+\frac{b}{d} t$ for some choice of integer $t$. Consider the following set of $d$ solutions

$$
x_{0}, x_{0}+\frac{n}{d}, x_{0}+2 \frac{n}{d}, \cdots, x_{0}+\frac{(d-1) n}{d} .
$$

We shall prove that these $d$ solutions are mutually incongruent modulo $n$.
Suppose on the contrary that

$$
x_{0}+\frac{n}{d} t_{1} \equiv x_{0}+\frac{n}{d} t_{2}(\bmod n)
$$

where $0 \leq t_{1}<t_{2} \leq d-1$, then

$$
\frac{n}{d} t_{1} \equiv \frac{n}{d} t_{2}(\bmod n) .
$$

Now $\operatorname{gcd}\left(\frac{n}{d}, n\right)=\frac{n}{d}$, and therefore, we can cancel $\frac{n}{d}$ to get

$$
t_{1} \equiv t_{2}(\bmod d) .
$$

which implies $d \mid t_{1}-t_{2}$. Since $0 \leq t_{1}<t_{2} \leq d-1, d$ cannot divide $t_{1}-t_{2}$. Thus we arrive at contradiction.

Now it remains to prove that any other solution $x_{0}+\frac{n}{d} t$ is congruent modulo $n$ to one of the $d$ integers listed above. By division algorithm, we have $t=d q+r$ where $q$ and $r$ are integers with $0 \leq r<d$. Hence,

$$
x_{0}+\frac{n}{d} t=x_{0}+\frac{n}{d}(q d+r)=x_{0}+n q+\frac{n}{d} r \equiv x_{0}+\frac{n}{d} r(\bmod n) .
$$

This proves the result.
Corollary.If $\operatorname{gcd}(a, n)=1$, then the linear congruence $a x \equiv b(\bmod n)$ has a unique solution modulo $n$.

This is immediate from the above theorem.
Ex.11.Solve $18 x \equiv 30(\bmod 42)$.
Solution.Consider $18 x \equiv 30(\bmod 42)$. Here, $\operatorname{gcd}(18,42)=6$ and that $6 \mid 30$. Therefore, there are 6 incongruent solutions modulo 42 given by $x \equiv x_{0}+\frac{n}{d} t(\bmod n)$ where $x_{0}$ is a particular solution of given linear congruence and $t=0,1, \ldots, 5$. Now
$18 x \equiv 30(\bmod 42) \Rightarrow 3 x \equiv 5(\bmod 7)$ multiplying both sides by 5 , we obtain
$15 x \equiv 25(\bmod 7) \Rightarrow x \equiv 4(\bmod 7)$. Thus $x_{0}=4$ is a particular solution.
Hence, the six solutions incongruent modulo 42 . Thus the 6 solutions are $x=4+\frac{42}{6} t(\bmod 42) \equiv 4+7 t(\bmod 42)$, that is, $x \equiv 4,11,18,25,32,39(\bmod 42)$.

Ex. 12 Using congruence solve $4 x+51 y=9$.
Solution.Consider $4 x+51 y=9$. This can be written as linear congruence $4 x \equiv 9(\bmod 51)$. We now solve this linear congruence for $x$. Now consider $4 x \equiv 9(\bmod 51)$.

Multiplying both sides by 13 , we get $52 x \equiv 117(\bmod 51)$, Thus $x \equiv 52 x \equiv 117(\bmod 51)$.
Therefore, $x \equiv 117 \equiv 15(\bmod 51)$. Hence, $x=15+51 t$ where $t$ is any integer.

Next we can take
$51 y \equiv 9(\bmod 4) \Rightarrow 3 y \equiv 1(\bmod 4) \Rightarrow 9 y \equiv 3(\bmod 4) \Rightarrow y \equiv 3(\bmod 4) \Rightarrow y=3+4 s$,
where $s$ is any integer. Using values of $x$ and $y$ in $4 x+51 y=9$,
we obtain the relation between $r$ and $s$ given by $4(15+51 t)+51(3+4 s)=9 \Rightarrow r+t+1=0$.
In general $x=15+51 t$ and $y=3+4(-1-t)=-1-4 t$, where $t$ is any integer.
Note. Value of $y$ in terms of $t$ can also be obtained directly on putting value of $x$ in terms of $t$ in the equation $4 x+51 y=9$.

## Theorem. (Chinese Remainder Theorem)

Let $n_{1}, n_{2}, \ldots, n_{r}$ be positive integers such that $\operatorname{gcd}\left(n_{i}, n_{j}\right)=1$ for $i \neq j$. Then the system of linear congruences

$$
\begin{aligned}
& x \equiv a_{1}\left(\bmod n_{1}\right) \\
& x \equiv a_{2}\left(\bmod n_{2}\right) \\
& \vdots \\
& x \equiv a_{r}\left(\bmod n_{r}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

has a simultaneous solution, which is unique modulo the integer $n_{1} n_{2} \cdots n_{r}$.
Proof.Let $n=n_{1} n_{2} \cdots n_{r}$. For each $k=1,2, \ldots, r$, let $N_{k}=\frac{n}{n_{k}}=n_{1} n_{2} \cdots n_{k-1} n_{k+1} \cdots n_{r}$. Since $n_{i}$ are relatively prime in pairs, $\operatorname{gcd}\left(N_{k}, n_{k}\right)=1$, for $k=1,2, \ldots, r$. Hence, each of the linear congruence $N_{k} x \equiv 1\left(\bmod n_{k}\right)$ has a unique solution say $x_{k}$, for $k=1,2, \ldots, r$. Thus $N_{k} x_{k} \equiv$ $1\left(\bmod n_{k}\right)$

Let $\bar{x}=a_{1} N_{1} x_{1}+a_{2} N_{2} x_{2}+\cdots+a_{r} N_{r} x_{r}$.
Claim: $\bar{x}$ is simultaneous solution of the system.
Since $n_{k} \mid N_{i}$ for $i \neq k, N_{i} \equiv 0\left(\bmod n_{k}\right)$ for $i \neq k$.
Hence,

$$
\bar{x}=a_{1} N_{1} x_{1}+a_{2} N_{2} x_{2}+\cdots+a_{r} N_{r} x_{r} \equiv a_{k} N_{k} x_{k}\left(\bmod n_{k}\right) .
$$

Since $N_{k} x_{k} \equiv 1\left(\bmod n_{k}\right)$, we have $\bar{x} \equiv a_{k} \cdot 1 \equiv a_{k}\left(\bmod n_{k}\right)$, for $k=1,2, \ldots, r$.
This proves the existence of solution

## Uniqueness:

Let $x^{\prime}$ be any other solution of the given system of linear congruences, then $x^{\prime} \equiv a_{k}\left(\bmod n_{k}\right)$, for each $\mathrm{k}=1,2, \ldots, \mathrm{r}$.

Hence $\bar{x} \equiv x^{\prime}\left(\bmod n_{k}\right), \quad(\mathrm{k}=1,2, \ldots, \mathrm{r})$

$$
\Rightarrow n_{k} \mid \bar{x}-x^{\prime}(\mathrm{k}=1,2, \ldots, \mathrm{r})
$$

Since $\operatorname{gcd}\left(n_{i}, n_{k}\right)=1$, for $i \neq k$, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& n=n_{1} n_{2} \ldots n_{r} \mid \bar{x}-x^{\prime} \\
& \Rightarrow \bar{x} \equiv x^{\prime}(\bmod n)
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence the uniqueness.
Ex. 12 The problem posed by Sun - Tsn corresponds to the system of three congruences

$$
\begin{aligned}
& x \equiv 2(\bmod 3) \\
& x \equiv 3(\bmod 5) \\
& x \equiv 2(\bmod 7) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Solution - Here $n_{1}=3, n_{2}=5, n_{3}=7$.
So $n=n_{1} n_{2} n_{3}=3 \cdot 5 \cdot 7=105$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& N_{1}=\frac{n}{n_{1}}=\frac{105}{3}=35 \\
& N_{2}=\frac{n}{n_{1}}=\frac{105}{5}=21 \\
& N_{3}=\frac{n}{n_{3}}=\frac{105}{7}=15
\end{aligned}
$$

Consider,

$$
N_{1} x \equiv 1(\bmod 3) \Rightarrow 35 x \equiv 1(\bmod 3)
$$

By inspection $x_{1}=2$ is a solution of this linear congruence.
Next,

$$
N_{2} x \equiv 1(\bmod 5) \Rightarrow 21 x \equiv 1(\bmod 5)
$$

By inspection $x_{2}=1$ is a solution of this linear congruence.
Further,

$$
N_{3} x=1(\bmod 7) \Rightarrow 15 x \equiv 1(\bmod 7)
$$

By inspection $x_{3}=1$ of this linear congruence.
Consider,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\bar{x} & =a_{1} N_{1} x_{1}+a_{2} N_{2} x_{2}+a_{3} N_{3} x_{3} \\
& =2.35 .2+3.21 .1+2.15 .1 \\
\bar{x} & =233
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus $\bar{x}=233(\bmod 105)$, that is, $\bar{x}=23(\bmod 105)$ is simultaneous solution given congruences.

Ex.13Solve $17 x \equiv 9(\bmod 276)$.
Solution. Note that $276=3.4 .23$ and given linear congruence is equivalent to

$$
\begin{align*}
& 17 x \equiv 9(\bmod 3) \text { or } x \equiv 0(\bmod 3)  \tag{1}\\
& 17 x \equiv 9(\bmod 4) \text { or } x \equiv 1(\bmod 4)  \tag{2}\\
& 17 x \equiv 9(\bmod 23) \tag{3}
\end{align*}
$$

Now

$$
\begin{equation*}
x \equiv 0(\bmod 3) \Rightarrow x=3 k, \text { for any integer } \mathrm{k} . \tag{4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using this in the second, we get

$$
\begin{align*}
& 3 k \equiv 1(\bmod 4) \text { or } \\
& k \equiv 9 k \equiv 3(\bmod 4) \\
& \Rightarrow k=3+4 j, \text { for any integer } \mathrm{j} . \tag{5}
\end{align*}
$$

Thus, $x=3 k=3(3+4 j)=9+12 j$.
Using this in (3), we obtain

$$
17(9+12 j) \equiv 9(\bmod 23)
$$

$\Rightarrow 204 j \equiv-144(\bmod 23)$
$\Rightarrow 3 j \equiv 6(\bmod 23)$
$\Rightarrow j \equiv 2(\bmod 23)$
$\Rightarrow j \equiv 2+23 t$, where ' $t$ ' is arbitrary integer.
Thus, $x=9+12(2+23 t)=33+276 t$.
Hence, $x=33(\bmod 276)$ is the solution.

## Linear Congruence of Two Variables

Linear congruence of two variables is a congruence of the form

$$
a x+b y \equiv c(\bmod n)
$$

Theorem. The system of linear congruences $a x+b y \equiv r(\bmod n)$ and $c x+d y \equiv s(\bmod n)$ has a unique solution modulo n whenever $\operatorname{gcd}(a d-b c, n)=1$

Proof. Consider $a x+b y \equiv r(\bmod n)$
and $c x+d y \equiv s(\bmod n)$.
$((1) \times d-(2) \times b)$ gives us
$(a d-b c) x \equiv(d r-b s)(\bmod n)$.
Since $\operatorname{gcd}(a d-b c, n)=1$,
$(a d-b c) z \equiv 1(\bmod n)$
has a unique solution of modulo n .
Let ' $t$ ' be a solution of (4) then
$(a d-b c) t \equiv 1(\bmod n)$
Multiplying both sides of (3) by ' $t$ ' we obtain
$(a d-b c) x t \equiv(d r-b s) t(\bmod n)$
Using (5) in (6) we get,
$x \equiv(d r-b s) t(\bmod n)$.

Similarly, $(1) \times c-(2) \times a$ gives us
$(b c-a d) y \equiv(c r-a s)(\bmod n)$
$\Rightarrow(a d-b c) y \equiv(a s-c r)(\bmod n)$
$\Rightarrow y \equiv(a s-c r) t(\bmod n)$
Ex. 14 Solve $7 x+3 y \equiv 10(\bmod 16)$

$$
\begin{equation*}
2 x+5 y \equiv 9(\bmod 16) \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Solution. Observe that $\operatorname{gcd}(7 \times 5-3 \times 2,16)=\operatorname{gcd}(35-6,16)=\operatorname{gcd}(29,16)=1$.
Hence, solution exists.
Consider, $(a d-b c) z \equiv 1(\bmod n) \Rightarrow(7 \times 5-3 \times 2) z \equiv 1(\bmod 16)$ that is, $29 z \equiv 1(\bmod 16)$
By inspection $z=5$ is a solution, therefore $t=5$.
Therefore, $x \equiv(d r-b s) t(\bmod n)$ gives us
$x \equiv(5 \cdot 10-3 \cdot 9)(5)(\bmod 16) \Rightarrow x \equiv 23 \cdot 5(\bmod 16) \Rightarrow x \equiv 115(\bmod 16) \Rightarrow x \equiv 3(\bmod 16)$
Similarly, $y \equiv(7 \cdot 9-2 \cdot 10)(5) \equiv 43 \cdot 5 \equiv 215 \equiv 7(\bmod 16)$
We can also solve this problem directly as follows.
$(1) \times 5-2(3)$ gives us
$35 x+15 y \equiv 50(\bmod 16)$
$6 x+15 y \equiv 27(\bmod 16)$
$\Rightarrow 29 x \equiv 23(\bmod 16)$
$\Rightarrow 13 x \equiv 7(\bmod 16)$
$\Rightarrow x \equiv 3(\bmod 16)$
Next, ( 1$) \times 2-2 \times 7$ gives us
$14 x+6 y \equiv 20(\bmod 16)$
$14 x+35 y \equiv 63(\bmod 16)$
$\Rightarrow-29 y \equiv-43(\bmod 16)$
$\Rightarrow 29 \mathrm{y} \equiv 43(\bmod 16)$
$-3 y \equiv-5(\bmod 16)$
$33 \mathrm{y} \equiv 55(\bmod 16)($ multiplying by 11 an brth sides)
$\Rightarrow y \equiv 7(\bmod 16)$

## EXERCISES 3.2

1. Solve $25 x \equiv 15(\bmod 29)($ Ans. $x \equiv 18(\bmod 29))$
2. Solve $140 x \equiv 133(\bmod 301)($ Ans. $16+63 t, t=0,1,2, \ldots, 6)$
3. Using congruences, solve $12 x+25 y=331$. (Ans. $x=13+25 t ; y=7-12 t$ )

## Unit-4

## Fermat's Theorem

4.1 Let us begin with Fermat's theorem

Theorem. Let p be prime and $a$ is an integer such that $p \nmid a$ then

$$
a^{p-1} \equiv 1(\bmod p)
$$

Proof. Consider the numbers $a, 2 a, 3 a, \ldots,(p-1) a$.
Claim. These $(p-1)$ integers are incongruent modulo p .

$$
\text { Let if possible } r a \equiv s a(\bmod p)
$$

where $1 \leq r<s<p$.
Since $p \nmid a$ and $p$ is $\operatorname{prime} \operatorname{gcd}(p, a)=1 \quad$ So, $r a \equiv \operatorname{sa}(\bmod p)$
$\Rightarrow r \equiv s(\bmod p)$
$\Rightarrow p \mid r-s$.
Since, $1 \leq r<s<p, p$ can not divide $r-s$.
Hence $a, 2 a, \ldots,(p-1) a$ leave different remainders when divided by p. Therefore, $a, 2 a, \ldots$, $(p-1) a$ leave remainders $1,2, \ldots, p-1$ in some order.
Therefore,
$a \cdot 2 a \cdot 3 a \cdots(p-1) a \equiv 1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \cdots(p-1)(\bmod p)$
$\Rightarrow 1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \cdots(p-1) a^{p-1} \equiv 1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \cdots(p-1)(\bmod p)$
$\Rightarrow(p-1)!a^{p-1} \equiv(p-1)!(\bmod p)$
$\Rightarrow a^{p-1}=1(\bmod p)$.
Note that as $\operatorname{gcd}(p,(p-1)!)=1$ we can cancel $(p-1)!$ from both sides.
Corollary. If $p$ is prime, then $a^{p} \equiv a(\bmod p)$ for every integer $a$.
Proof. If $p \mid a$ then the result is trivially true. Further if $p \nmid a$ then by Fermat's theorem

$$
\begin{aligned}
& a^{p-1} \equiv 1(\bmod p) \\
& \Rightarrow a^{p} \equiv a(\bmod p)
\end{aligned}
$$

Ex. 1 Find the remainder when, $5^{38}$ is divided by 11 .
Solution.By Fermat's Theorem $5^{10} \equiv 1(\bmod 11)$. Clearly $5^{2} \equiv 3(\bmod 11)$ and $3^{4} \equiv 4(\bmod 11)$
Thus, $5^{8} \equiv 3^{4} \equiv 4(\bmod 11)$.
Hence, $5^{38}=5^{30} 5^{8}=\left(5^{10}\right)^{3} 5^{8} \equiv 1^{3} \cdot 4 \equiv 4(\bmod 11)$
Therefore,

$$
5^{38} \equiv 4(\bmod 11)
$$

Thus remainder is 4 .
Ex.2. Use Fermat's theorem to verify that $17 \mid 11^{104}+1$.
Solution. By Fermat's theorem
$11^{16} \equiv 1(\bmod 17)$.
Further $\left(11^{16}\right)^{6} \equiv 1^{6}(\bmod 17) \Rightarrow 11^{96}=\left(11^{16}\right) \equiv 1^{6} \equiv 1(\bmod 17)$.
Now
$11^{2}=121 \equiv 2(\bmod 17) \Rightarrow 11^{8} \equiv 2^{4} \equiv(-1)(\bmod 17)$.
Thus
$11^{104}=11^{96} \cdot 11^{8} \equiv 1(-1)(\bmod 17) \Rightarrow 11^{104}+1 \equiv 0(\bmod 17)$.
Note. If $a^{n} \equiv a(\bmod n) \quad$ fails to hold good for some choice of $a$ then n is necessarily composite.

For example, $n=117$, then $2^{117}=2^{16.7+5}=\left(2^{7}\right)^{16} \cdot 2^{5}$.
Here $\quad 2^{7}=128 \equiv 11(\bmod 117)$.
So that

$$
2^{117}=\left(2^{7}\right)^{16} \cdot 2^{5} \equiv 11^{16} \cdot 2^{5}(\bmod 117)
$$

Now $(11)^{16}=(121)^{8} \equiv 4^{8}(\bmod 117)$.
Thus,
$2^{117} \equiv 4^{8} \cdot 2^{5} \equiv 2^{21}(\bmod 117)$.
Now,
$2^{21}=\left(2^{7}\right)^{3} \equiv 11^{3}(\bmod 117)$.
Therefore,

$$
11^{3}=121 \cdot 11 \equiv 4.11(\bmod 117)
$$

Thus

$$
2^{21} \equiv 11^{3} \equiv 44(\bmod 117)
$$

Hence,

$$
\left(a 1+q^{p-1} \equiv 1(\bmod p q) .\right.
$$

Thus,
$2^{117}=44(\bmod 117)$
$2^{117} \not \equiv 2(\bmod 117)$
and that $117=13 \times 9$ is composite.
Lemma. If $p$ and $q$ are distinct primes with $a^{p} \equiv a(\bmod q)$ and $a^{q} \equiv a(\bmod p)$ and then
$a^{p q}=a(\bmod p q)$.
Proof - By Fermat's theorem
$\left(a^{q}\right)^{p} \equiv a^{q}(\bmod p)$ and $\left(a^{p}\right)^{q} \equiv a^{p}(\bmod q)$
These two along with
$a^{q} \equiv a(\bmod p)$ and $a^{p} \equiv a(\bmod q)$
Gives us
$\left(a^{q}\right)^{p} \equiv a^{q}(\bmod p) \Rightarrow a^{p q} \equiv a(\bmod p)$
And
$\left(a^{p}\right)^{q} \equiv a^{p} \equiv a(\bmod q)$
$\Rightarrow a^{p q} \equiv a(\bmod q)$
Since p and q are distinct primes $\operatorname{gcd}(p, q)=1$ and, hence, $a^{p q} \equiv a(\bmod p q)$.
Ex.3. Let $p$ and $q$ be distinct primes, prove that $p^{q-1}+q^{p-1} \equiv 1(\bmod p q)$.
Solution. By Fermat's theorem $p^{q-1} \equiv 1(\bmod q)$ and $q^{p-1} \equiv 1(\bmod p)$. Also $p^{q-1} \equiv 0(\bmod p)$ and $q^{p-1} \equiv 0(\bmod q)$. Thus $p^{q-1}+q^{p-1} \equiv 1(\bmod p)$ and $p^{q-1}+q^{p-1} \equiv 1(\bmod q)$, therefore, $p^{q-1}+q^{p-1} \equiv 1(\bmod p q)$.

Ex.4. Let $p$ and $q$ be distinct odd primes such that $p-1 \mid q-1$. If $\operatorname{gcd}(a, p q)=1$, prove that $a^{q-1} \equiv 1(\bmod p q)$.

Solution. Since $\operatorname{gcd}(a, p q)=1$ and $p, q$ are relatively prime $\operatorname{gcd}(a, p)=1$ and $\operatorname{gcd}(a, q)=1$.
By Fermat's theorem $a^{q-1} \equiv 1(\bmod q)$ and $a^{p-1} \equiv 1(\bmod p)$.
Since $p-1\left|q-1,\left(a^{p-1}-1\right)\right|\left(a^{q-1}-1\right)$.
Therefore, as $p \mid a^{p-1}-1$, we have $p \mid a^{q-1}-1$. Hence, $a^{q-1} \equiv 1(\bmod p)$.
Thus $a^{q-1} \equiv 1(\bmod p q)$.
Ex.5. Find the units digit of $3^{100}$ by use of Fermat's theorem.
Solution. Observe that by Fermat's theorem $3^{4} \equiv 1(\bmod 5)$ and $3^{4} \equiv 1(\bmod 2)$.
Since $\operatorname{gcd}(5,2)=1$, we get $3^{4} \equiv 1(\bmod 10)$. Thus $3^{8}=\left(3^{4}\right)^{2} \equiv 1^{2} \equiv 1(\bmod 10)$.
Hence, $3^{9}=3^{8} 3 \equiv 1 \cdot 3 \equiv 3(\bmod 10)$. Further, $3^{100}=3 \cdot\left(3^{9}\right)^{11} \equiv 3 \cdot 3^{11} \equiv 3^{4} \cdot 3^{8} \equiv 1 \cdot 1 \equiv 1(\bmod 10)$.
Thus units digit is 1 .

### 4.2 Pseudo Prime

By Fermat's theorem $a^{p-1} \equiv 1(\bmod p)$ happens for all prims p with the condition that $p \nmid a$

However $a^{p-1} \equiv 1(\bmod p)$ may hold for non-prime p also.
Consider the example

$$
2^{10}=1024=31 \times 33+1 .
$$

That is

$$
2^{10} \equiv 1(\bmod 31) \Rightarrow 2^{11} \equiv 2(\bmod 31)
$$

And by Fermat's theorem

$$
2^{10} \equiv 1(\bmod 11)
$$

So that

$$
2^{31}=2 \times 2^{30}=2 \times\left(2^{10}\right)^{3} \equiv 2 \times 1(\bmod 11) .
$$

Therefore,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 2^{11 \cdot 31} \equiv 2(\bmod 11 \cdot 31) \\
& \Rightarrow 2^{341} \equiv 2(\bmod 341) \\
& \Rightarrow 2^{340} \equiv 1(\bmod 341)
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus $a^{n-1} \equiv 1(\bmod n)$ holds for non-prime n . In other words, $n \mid a^{n-1}-1$.
In particular $n \mid 2^{n-1}-1$.
Such a composite integer ' $n$ ' is called Pseudo prime.
Note. $a^{n-1} \equiv 1(\bmod n)$ need not imply n is prime.
Definition.A composite number n is $p$ seudo prime if $n \mid 2^{n}-2$.
Note. Smallest pseudo prime is 341 . Some others are 561, 645, 1105.
Theorem. If n is an odd pseudo prime then $M_{n}=2^{n}-1$ is a larger one.
Proof. Let ' n ' be an odd pseudo prime. Since n is composite, let $n=r s$, where $r, s>1$ we may assume that $1<r \leq s<n$. Then
$M_{n}=2^{n}-1$
$=2^{r s}-1$
$=\left(2^{r}\right)^{s}-1$
$=\left(2^{r}-1\right)\left[\left(2^{\prime}\right)^{s-1}+\left(2^{\prime}\right)^{s-2}+\ldots .+\left(2^{\prime}\right)+1\right]$
Thus $M_{n}$ is composite number .
Since n is pseudo prime, $n \mid 2^{n}-2$. .
That is, $2^{n-1}-2=k n$ for some integer k .
Now,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 2^{M_{n}-1}-1=2^{2^{n}-2}-1 \\
& =2^{k n}-1 \\
& =\left(2^{n}-1\right)\left[\left(2^{n}\right)^{k-1}+\left(2^{n}\right)^{k-2}+\cdots+1\right] \\
& =M_{n}\left[\left(2^{n}\right)^{k-1}+\left(2^{n}\right)^{k-2}+\cdots+\left(2^{n}\right)+1\right] .
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus,
$M_{n}\left|2^{M_{n}-1}-1 \Rightarrow M_{n}\right| 2\left(2^{M_{n}-1}-1\right)=2^{M_{n}}-2$.
Therefore, $M_{n}$ is pseudo prime.
Definition. (Pseudo Prime to base a). A composite integer n for which $a^{n} \equiv a(\bmod n)$ holds in called pseudo prime to the base $a$.

Notes . 1. Pseudo prime to the base 2 is called pseudo prime.
2. 91 is smallest pseudo prime to the base 3 .
3. 217 is the smallest pseudo prime to the base 5 .
4. There are infinitely many pseudo primes to any given base
5. There are 245 pseudo prime less than one million.
6. First example of even pseudo prime is $161038=2 \times 73 \times 1103$ and was found in 1950.
7. There exist composite number n which are pseudo prime to every base $a$ i.e. $a^{n} \equiv a(\bmod n)$ for all ' $a$ '. The least such integer is 561 . These exceptional numbers are called as absolute pseudo primes or Carmichael numbers_.

Carmichael indicated four absolute pseudo primes namely 561, 1105, 2821, 15841.
Ex.6. Prove that 561 is an absolute pseudo prime.
Solution. Note that $561=3 \times 11 \times 17$.
Let $\operatorname{gcd}(a, 561)=1$ then $\operatorname{gcd}(a, 3)=1, \operatorname{gcd}(a, 11)=1, \operatorname{gcd}(a, 17)=1$.
Hence by Fermat's theorem

$$
a^{2} \equiv 1(\bmod 3), a^{10} \equiv 1(\bmod 11), a^{16} \equiv 1(\bmod 17)
$$

$\Rightarrow a^{560} \equiv\left(a^{2}\right)^{280} \equiv 1^{280} \equiv 1(\bmod 3)$,
$a^{560} \equiv\left(a^{10}\right)^{56} \equiv 1^{56} \equiv 1(\bmod 11)$,
$a^{560} \equiv\left(a^{16}\right)^{35} \equiv 1^{35} \equiv 1(\bmod 17)$,
Thus, $\quad a^{560} \equiv 1(\bmod 3 \cdot 11 \cdot 17)$.
That is, $\mathrm{a}^{560} \equiv 1(\bmod 561)$ i.e., $\mathrm{a}^{561} \equiv \mathrm{a}(\bmod 561)$.
Theorem. Let n a composite square free integer say, $n=p_{1} p_{2} \ldots p$ where the $p_{i}$ are distinct primes. If $p_{i-1} \mid n-1$ for $i=1,2, \ldots, r$ then n is absolute pseudo prime.

Proof. Suppose a is an integer relatively prime to n , that is $\operatorname{gcd}(a, n)=1$.
Then $\operatorname{gcd}\left(a, p_{i}\right)=1$ for $i=1,2, \ldots, r$.
Hence, by Fermat's theorem, $a^{p_{i}-1} \equiv 1\left(\bmod p_{i}\right)$.
Thus $p_{i} \mid a^{p_{i}-1}-1$.
Since $p_{i} \mid n-1$ for each $i=1,2, \ldots, r$, we have $a^{p_{i}-1}-1 \mid a^{n-1}-1$.

Thus $p_{i} \mid a^{n-1}-1$ for all $i=1,2, \ldots, r$.
Therefore, $n=p_{1} p_{2} \ldots p_{n} \mid a^{n-1}-1$.
Thus, $a^{n-1} \equiv 1(\bmod n)$, for all integers $a$. (relative prime ton)
Hence $n$ is absolute pseudo prime.
e. g. 1) $561=3.11 .17$

$$
2|560, \quad 10| 560, \quad 16 \mid 560
$$

2) $1729=7.13 .19$

6|1728, 12|1728, 16|1728
3) $10585=5.29 .73$

4|10584, 28|10584, 72|10584
Note. 1) Therefore are only 43 absolute pseudo primes less than one million.

### 4.3 Wilson's Theorem

Statement. For any prime $p,(p-1)!\equiv-1(\bmod p)$.
Proof. For $\mathrm{p}=2,3$ the result is trivial
Let $\mathrm{p}>3$
Let $a$ be any one of the integers $1,2,3, \ldots, p-1$.
Then $\operatorname{gcd}(a, p)=1$.
Consider the linear congruence $a x \equiv 1(\bmod p)$. Since $\operatorname{gcd}(a, p)=1$ the linear congruence $a x \equiv 1(\bmod p)$ has a unique solution modulo p .

Let $a^{\prime}$ be a solution of $a x \equiv 1(\bmod p)$, such that $a^{\prime}$ is one amongst $1,2, \ldots, \mathrm{p}-1$.
Thus $a^{\prime}$ is unique integer such that $1 \leq a^{\prime} \leq p-1$ satisfying $a a^{\prime} \equiv 1(\bmod p)$.
Claim - : $a=a^{\prime}$ if and only if either $a=1$ or $a=p-1$.
Consider,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& a^{2} \equiv 1(\bmod p) \\
& \Rightarrow a^{2}-1 \equiv 0(\bmod p) \\
& \Rightarrow(a-1)(a+1) \equiv 0(\bmod p) \\
& \Rightarrow a-1 \equiv 0(\bmod p) \text { or } \Rightarrow a+1 \equiv 0(\bmod p)
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence either $a=1$ or $a=p-1$.
Thus for any $a$ other than 1 and $\mathrm{p}-1, a^{\prime}$ is distinct from $a$.
Thus we obtain $((p-3) / 2)$ pairs $\left(a, a^{\prime}\right)$ such that, $a a^{\prime} \equiv 1(\bmod p)$.
Hence,
$2 \cdot 3 \cdots(p-2) \equiv 1(\bmod p)$
$\Rightarrow(p-2)!\equiv 1(\bmod p)$
$\Rightarrow(p-1)(p-2)!\equiv p-1(\bmod p)$
$\Rightarrow(p-1)!\equiv-1(\bmod p)$
e.g. Let $p=13$
$2.7 \equiv 1(\bmod 13)$
$3.9 \equiv 1(\bmod 13)$
$4.10 \equiv 1(\bmod 13)$
$5.8 \equiv 1(\bmod 13)$
$6.11 \equiv 1(\bmod 13)$
Hence, $11!\equiv 1(\bmod 13)$

$$
\text { i.e., } 12!\equiv-1(\bmod 13) .
$$

Converse of Wilson's theorem is also true
Theorem.If $(n-1)!\equiv-1(\bmod n)$ then is prime.
Proof. Suppose n is composite then there is d such that $1<\mathrm{d}<\mathrm{n}$ and $\mathrm{d} \mid \mathrm{n}$. Then $\mathrm{d} \mid(\mathrm{n}-1)$ ! Thus $d \mid-1$, so that we arrive at contradiction. Hence n is prime.

Theorem. The quadratic congruence $x^{2}+1 \equiv 0(\bmod p)$ where p is odd prime, has a solution if and only if $p \equiv 1(\bmod 4)$.

Proof. Let $a$ be any solution of $x^{2}+1 \equiv 0(\bmod p)$.Then $a^{2} \equiv-1(\bmod p)$.
Since $p \nmid a$, Fermat's theorem gives us
$1 \equiv a^{p-1} \equiv\left(a^{2}\right)^{\frac{p-1}{2}} \equiv(-1)^{\frac{p-1}{2}}(\bmod p)$.
This holds only if $\frac{p-1}{2}$ is even.
i.e. $p-1 \equiv 0(\bmod 4)$ or $p \equiv 1(\bmod 4)$
(If p is of the form $4 \mathrm{k}+3$ then $\frac{p-1}{2}$ is of the form $2 \mathrm{k}+1$ and hence
$(-1)^{\frac{p-1}{2}}=(-1)^{2 k+1}=-1$.
So that, $1 \equiv-1(\bmod p)$ which is impossible for odd prime)
Conversely,
Suppose that $p \equiv 1(\bmod 4)$
To prove that $x^{2}+1 \equiv 0(\bmod p)$ has a solution.
We know,
$p-1 \equiv-1(\bmod p)$
$p-2 \equiv-2(\bmod p)$
$\frac{p+1}{2} \equiv-\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right)(\bmod p)$.
Consider,
$(p-1)!=1 \cdot 2 \cdots\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right)\left(\frac{p+1}{2}\right) \cdots(p-1)$
$=1 \cdot(p-1) \cdot 2 \cdot(p-2) \cdots\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right)\left(\frac{p+1}{2}\right)$.
Thus we obtain,
$(p-1)!\equiv 1(-1) 2(-2) 3(-3) \ldots . .\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right)\left(-\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right)\right)$
$\equiv(-1)^{\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right)}\left[\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right)!\right]^{2}(\bmod p)$.
Since, $p \equiv 1(\bmod 4),\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right)$ is even and hence, $(p-1)!\equiv\left[\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right)!\right]^{2}(\bmod p)$.
By Wilson's theorem, we have
$(p-1)!\equiv-1(\bmod p)$.
Thus,
$-1 \equiv\left[\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right)!\right]^{2}(\bmod p)$.
That is, $\left[\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right)!\right]^{2}+1 \equiv 0(\bmod p)$.
Therefore, $x=\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right)!$ is a solution of quadratic congruence $x^{2}+1 \equiv 0(\bmod p)$.
Ex.7. Find the remainder when 15 ! is divided by 17 .
Solution. By Wilson's theorem, we have $16!\equiv-1(\bmod 17)$, that is, $16!\equiv 16(\bmod 17)$.
Since $\operatorname{gcd}(16,17)=1$, we can cancel 16 from both sides and we get, $15!\equiv 1(\bmod 17)$.
Therefore, the remainder is 1 .
Note. It may be noted that, for any prime $p,(p-2)!\equiv 1(\bmod p)$ which is an intermediate step in the proof of Wilson's theorem.

Ex. 8 Find the remainder when 2.26 !is divided by 29.
Solution.By Wilson's theorem, $28!\equiv-1(\bmod 29)$, that is,$-1 \equiv 28!(\bmod 29)$. Therefore,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& -1 \equiv 26!27.28(\bmod 29) \\
& \Rightarrow-1 \equiv 26!(-2)(-1)(\bmod 29) \\
& \Rightarrow-1 \equiv 26!(2)(\bmod 29) \\
& \Rightarrow 2.26!\equiv 28(\bmod 29) .
\end{aligned}
$$

### 4.4 Fermat's Factorization Method

In this method we try to write integer $n$ as difference of two squares. We start with an integer $a$ whose square is greater than $n$ and nearest to $n$ and proceed further by taking $a+1, a+2, \ldots, a+k$ till we get an integer $b$ such that $(a+k)^{2}-n=b^{2}$.

Ex. 9 Using Fermat's factorization method factorize 119143.
Solution. Observe that, $345^{2}<119143<346^{2}$.
Consider,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 346^{2}-119143=119716-119143=573 \\
& 347^{2}-119143=120409-119143=1266 \\
& 348^{2}-119143=121104-119143=1961 \\
& 349^{2}-119143=121801-119143=2658 \\
& 350^{2}-119143=122501-119143=3357 \\
& 351^{2}-119143=123204-119143=4058 \\
& 352^{2}-119143=123902-119143=4761=(69)^{2} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus,

$$
352^{2}-119143=(69)^{2} \Rightarrow 119143=352^{2}-(69)^{2}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& =(352+69)(352-69) \\
& =421 \times 283 .
\end{aligned}
$$

## Ex.10. Factors 23449

Solution. Observe that $153^{2}<23449<154^{2}$.
Consider

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 154^{2}-23449=23716-23449=267 \\
& 155^{2}-23449=24025-23449=576=24^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 155^{2}-23449=24^{2} \\
& 23449=155^{2}-24^{2} \\
& =(155+24)(155-24) \\
& =179 \times 131 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Note. While examinating the difference for possible square many values can be excluded by inspection. We know that the square must end in one of the 6 digits $0,1,4,5,6,9$

Further by calculating the squares of the integers the last two digits are limited to 00 , $01,04,09,16,21,24,25,29,36,41,44,49,56,61,69,76,81,84,89,96$.

Ex.11. Factorize 2279, 10541, 340663.
Solution. 1) 2279
We observe that-
$47^{2}<2279<48^{2}$.
Consider,
$48^{2}-2279=25=5^{2}$.
Therefore, $2279=48^{2}-5^{2}$.
$2279=(48+5)(48-5)$
$=53 \times 43$
2) 10541

We observe that
$102^{2}<10541<103^{2}$.
Consider $103^{2}-10541=68$
$1024-10541=275$
$105^{2}-10541=484=22^{2}$
$105^{2}-10541=22^{2}$
$10541=105^{2}-22^{2}$
$=(105-22)(105+22)$
$=83 \times 127$
3) 340663

We observe that
$583<340663<590$
Consider
$(584)^{2}-340663=393$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& (585)^{2}-340663=1562, \\
& (586)^{2}-340663=2733, \\
& (587)^{2}-340663=3906, \\
& (588)^{2}-340663=5081, \\
& (589)^{2}-340663=6258, \\
& (590)^{2}-340663=7439, \\
& (591)^{2}-340663=8618, \\
& (592)^{2}-340663=9801=99^{2} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus $(592)^{2}-340663=99^{2}$.
Hence,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 340663=(592)^{2}-99^{2} \\
& =(592-99)(592+99) \\
& =493 \times 691 .
\end{aligned}
$$

### 4.5 Generalization of Fermat's Factorization Method

Here we look for two integers $x$ and $y$ such that $x^{2}-y^{2}$ is a multiple of n . In other words $x^{2} \equiv y^{2}(\bmod n)$.

Let $d=\operatorname{gcd}(x-y, n)(\operatorname{ord}=\operatorname{gcd}(x+y, n)$
Then is d a non - trivial divisor of n ?, that is, do we have $1<d<n$ ?
In practice, $n$ is usually the product of two primes $p$ and $q$. Let n be a number of the form $\mathrm{n}=\mathrm{pq}$, where p and q are prime integers. With no loss of generality we can take $\mathrm{p}<\mathrm{q}$. Note that d is one of the integer $1, \mathrm{p}, \mathrm{q}, \mathrm{pq}$. Suppose that $p \mid x-y$ and $q \mid x-y$ then $p q \mid x-y$. But then $n=p q \mid x-y$ that is $x \equiv y(\bmod n)$. Similarly if $p \mid x+y$ and $q \mid x+y$ then $x \equiv-y(\bmod n)$. Since $x \neq \pm y(\bmod n)$. Hence, one of p and q divides $(x+y)$ and the other $(x-y)$. Thus $\operatorname{gcd}(x-y, n)$ and $\operatorname{gcd}(x+y, n)$ give us the two divisors of n .

Ex.12. Factorize 2189.
Solution - Consider $\mathrm{n}=2189$.
Let us look for squares close to multiple of $n$.
Observe that $47^{2}-2189=20$.
Now $66^{2}-2 \times 2189=-22$,
$(81)^{2}-3 \times 2189=-6$,
$(94)^{2}-4 \times 2189=80$,
$(105)^{2}-5 \times 2189=80$,
$(115)^{2}-6 \times 2189=91$,
$(124)^{2}-7 \times 2189=53$,
$(132)^{2}-8 \times 2189=-88$,
$(140)^{2}-9 \times 2189=-101$,
$(148)^{2}-10 \times 2189=14$,
$(155)^{2}-11 \times 2189=-54$.
Now, $81 \times 155=12555 \equiv-579(\bmod 2189) \Rightarrow 81^{2} \times 155^{2} \equiv(579)^{2}(\bmod 2189)$.
Further
$81^{2} \equiv-6(\bmod 2189)$ and $155^{2} \equiv-54(\bmod 2189)$.
Thus $(81)^{2}(155)^{2} \equiv(-6)(-54) \equiv(18)^{2}(\bmod 2189)$.
Hence $(579)^{2} \equiv(18)^{2}(\bmod 2189)$.
Thus $\operatorname{gcd}(579+18,2189)=\operatorname{gcd}(597,2189)=199$ and $\operatorname{gcd}(579-18,2189)=\operatorname{gcd}(561,2189)=11$ are factors of 2189 .

## EXERCISES

1. Factor the number $2^{11}-1$ by Fermat's factorization method.(Ans. $89 \times 23$ )
2. Employ the generalized Fermat's method to factor each of the following numbers
a) 2911 [Hint, $138^{2} \equiv 67^{2}(\bmod 2911)$ ]
b) $4573\left[\right.$ Hint, $\left.177^{2} \equiv 92^{2}(\bmod 2911)\right]$

## Unit-5

## Number Theoretic Functions

5.1 A function from set of integers into set of integers is called number theoretic function.

We begin with
Definition. For any integer $n$ the number of positive divisors of $n$ is denoted by $\tau(n)$.
Definition. For any integer $n$ the sum of all positive divisors of $n$ is denoted by $\sigma(n)$.
e.g. $1 . \tau(1)=1, \tau(2)=2, \tau(3)=2, \tau(4)=3, \tau(5)=2, \tau(6)=4, \tau(7)=2, \tau(8)=4, \tau(9)=3, \tau(10)=4$
2. $\sigma(1)=1, \sigma(2)=3, \sigma(3)=4, \sigma(4)=7, \sigma(5)=6, \sigma(6)=12, \sigma(7)=8, \sigma(8)=15$, $\sigma(9)=13, \sigma(10)=18$.

Notation. Let n be any integer and $d_{1}, d_{2}, \ldots, d_{r}$ denote divisors of $n$, then

$$
\sum_{d \mid n} f(d)=f\left(d_{1}\right)+f\left(d_{2}\right)+\cdots+f\left(d_{r}\right) .
$$

With this notation we have $\tau(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} 1 ; \sigma(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} d$.
Note: For any prime $p, \tau(p)=2, \sigma(p)=p+1$.
Theorem. If $n=p_{1}^{k_{1}} p_{2}^{k_{2}} \ldots p_{r}^{k_{r}}$ is the prime factorization of $n>1$, then the positive divisors of $n$ are precisely those integers $d$ of the form $d=p_{1}{ }^{a_{1}} p_{2}{ }^{a_{2}} \ldots p_{r}{ }^{a_{r}}$ where $0 \leq a_{i}<k_{i}$ for $i=1,2, \ldots, r$.

Proof. Note that the divisor $d=1$ is obtained when $a_{1}=a_{2}=\cdots=a_{r}=0$ and $n$ itself occurs when $a_{1}=k_{1}, a_{2}=k_{2}, \ldots, a_{r}=k_{r}$. Let $d$ be the nontrivial divisor of $n$, then $n=d d^{\prime}$ where $d, d^{\prime}>1$. Let $d=q_{1} q_{2} \cdots q_{s}, d^{\prime}=t_{1} t_{2} \cdots t_{u}$ be the prime factorizations of $d$ and $d^{\prime}$. Then $p_{1}^{k_{1}} p_{2}^{k_{2}} \cdots p_{r}^{k_{r}}=q_{1} q_{2} \cdots q_{s} t_{1} t_{2} \cdots t_{u}$ will be two factorizations of $n$.

Hence, by uniqueness of factorization, we obtain $d=p_{1}{ }^{a_{1}} p_{2}{ }^{a_{2}} \ldots p_{r}{ }^{a_{r}}$, where $0 \leq a_{i} \leq k_{i}$ and the possibility that $a_{i}=0$ is permitted.

Conversely, let $d=p_{1}^{a_{1}} p_{2}^{a_{2}} \ldots p_{r}^{a_{r}}$, where $0 \leq a_{i}<k_{i}$.
Then
$n=p_{1}^{k_{1}} p_{2}^{k_{2}} \ldots p_{r}^{k_{r}}=p_{1}^{a_{1}} p_{2}^{a_{2}} \ldots p_{r}^{a_{r}} p_{1}^{k_{1}-a_{1}} p_{2}^{k_{2}-a_{2}} \ldots p_{r}^{k_{r}-a_{r}}=d d^{\prime}$ where $d^{\prime}=p_{1}^{k_{1}-a_{1}} p_{2}^{k_{2}-a_{2}} \ldots p_{r}^{k_{r}-a_{r}}$ and $k_{i}-a_{i} \geq 0$ for $1 \leq i \leq r$. Then $d^{\prime}>0$ and $d \mid n$.

Theorem. If $n=p_{1}^{k_{1}} p_{2}^{k_{2}} \ldots p_{r}^{k_{r}}$ is the prime factorization of $n>1$, then
a) $\tau(n)=\left(k_{1}+1\right)\left(k_{2}+1\right) \cdots\left(k_{r}+1\right)$
b) $\sigma(n)=\left(\frac{p_{1}^{k_{1}+1}-1}{p_{1}-1}\right)\left(\frac{p_{2}^{k_{2}+1}-1}{p_{2}-1}\right) \cdots\left(\frac{p_{r}^{k_{r}+1}-1}{p_{r}-1}\right)$.

Proof. We know that every divisor of $n$ is of the form $d=p_{1}^{a_{1}} p_{2}{ }^{a_{2}} \ldots p_{r}{ }^{a_{r}}$ where $0 \leq a_{i}<k_{i}$. There are $k_{1}+1$ choices for the exponent $a_{1}$, there are $k_{2}+1$ choices for the exponent $a_{2}, \ldots$ and $k_{r}+1$ choices for the exponent $a_{r}$. Hence, $\tau(n)=\left(k_{1}+1\right)\left(k_{2}+1\right) \cdots\left(k_{r}+1\right)$.

Further,

$$
\sigma(n)=\left(1+p_{1}+p_{1}^{2}+\cdots+p_{1}^{k_{1}}\right)\left(1+p_{2}+p_{2}^{2}+\cdots+p_{2}^{k_{2}}\right) \cdots\left(1+p_{r}+p_{r}^{2}+\cdots+p_{r}^{k_{r}}\right)
$$

Thus $\sigma(n)=\left(\frac{p_{1}^{k_{1}+1}-1}{p_{1}-1}\right)\left(\frac{p_{2}^{k_{2}+1}-1}{p_{2}-1}\right) \cdots\left(\frac{p_{r}^{k_{r}+1}-1}{p_{r}-1}\right)$.
e.g. Let $n=180=2^{2} \cdot 3^{2} \cdot 5^{1}$.

Therefore,

$$
\tau(180)=(2+1)(2+1)(1+1)=18 \text { and } \sigma(180)=\left(\frac{2^{3}-1}{2-1}\right)\left(\frac{3^{3}-1}{3-1}\right)\left(\frac{5^{2}-1}{5-1}\right)=546 .
$$

Theorem. The product of positive divisors of $n>1$ is $n^{\mathrm{T}(\mathrm{n}) / 2}$.
Proof.Let d and $d^{\prime}$ 'be a positive divisors of n then $n=d d^{\prime}$, where $1 \leq d \leq n, 1 \leq d^{\prime} \leq n$.
So, $n^{\tau(n)}=\prod_{d \mid n} d \prod_{d \mid n} d^{\prime}$. Since $\prod_{d \mid n} d=\prod_{d^{\prime} \mid n} d^{\prime}$.
We have, $n^{\tau(n)}=\left(\prod_{d \mid n} d\right)^{2} \Rightarrow n^{\frac{\tau(n)}{2}}=\prod_{d \mid n} d$.
e.g. $\prod_{d \mid 16} d=16^{\tau(16) / 2}=16^{5 / 2}=2^{10}=1024$.

Note that, $\tau(20)=\tau(5) \cdot \tau(4)$ but $\tau(20) \neq \tau(10) \cdot \tau(2)$ and $\sigma(20)=\sigma(5) \cdot \sigma(4)$ but

$$
\sigma(20) \neq \sigma(10) \cdot \sigma(2)
$$

### 5.2 Multiplicative Function

Let f be a number theoretic function, then f is multiplicative if,
$f(m \cdot n)=f(m) \cdot f(n)$ whenever $\operatorname{gcd}(m, n)=1$.
Theorem. The function $\tau$ and $\sigma$ are multiplicative.

Proof : Let $\mathrm{m}, \mathrm{n}$ be integers such that $\operatorname{gcd}(m, n)=1$. If either $\mathrm{m}=1$ or $\mathrm{n}=1$ then as $\sigma(1)=1$ and,$\tau(1)=1$,the result is trivial.

Suppose that $\mathrm{m}>1$ and $\mathrm{n}>1$.
By fundamental theorem of Arithmetic

$$
m=p_{1}^{k_{1}} p_{2}^{k_{2}} \ldots p_{r}^{k_{r}} \text { and } n=q_{1}^{l_{1}} q_{2}^{l_{2}} \ldots q_{s}^{l_{s}} .
$$

where, $p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{r}$ and $q_{1}, q_{2}, \ldots, q_{s}$ are primes and $k_{1}, k_{2}, \ldots, k_{r} ; l_{1}, l_{2}, \ldots, l_{s}$ are positive integers.

Thus, $m n=p_{1}^{k_{1}} p_{2}^{k_{2}} \ldots p_{r}^{k_{r}} q_{1}^{l_{1}} q_{2}^{l_{2}} \ldots q_{s}^{l_{s}}$.
Since $m$ and $n$ are relatively prime, $p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{r}$ and $q_{1}, q_{2}, \ldots, q_{s}$ are distinct primes, we have

$$
\sigma(m n)=\left(\frac{p_{1}^{k_{1}+1}-1}{p_{1}-1}\right)\left(\frac{p_{2}^{k_{2}+1}-1}{p_{2}-1}\right) \cdots\left(\frac{p_{r}^{k_{r}+1}-1}{p_{r}-1}\right)\left(\frac{q_{1}^{l_{1}+1}-1}{q_{1}-1}\right)\left(\frac{q_{2}^{l_{2}+1}-1}{q_{2}-1}\right) \cdots\left(\frac{q_{s}^{l_{s}+1}-1}{q_{s}-1}\right)=\sigma(m) \sigma(n)
$$

and
$\tau(m n)=\left(k_{1}+1\right)\left(k_{2}+1\right) \cdots\left(k_{r}+1\right)\left(l_{1}+1\right)\left(l_{2}+1\right) \cdots\left(l_{s}+1\right)=\tau(m) \tau(n)$
Lemma. If $\operatorname{gcd}(m, n)=1$ then the set of positive divisors of $m n$ consists of all products $d_{1} d_{2}$ where $d_{1} \mid m$ and $d_{2} \mid n$ and $\operatorname{gcd}\left(d_{1}, d_{2}\right)=1$. Furthermore, these products are all distinct.

Proof. Suppose $\mathrm{m}>1$ and $\mathrm{n}>1$, then, by Fundamental theorem of Arithmetic both m and n have prime factorization as follows. $m=p_{1}^{k_{1}} p_{2}^{k_{2}} \ldots p_{r}^{k_{r}}$ and $n=q_{1}^{l_{1}} q_{2}^{l_{2}} \ldots q_{s}^{l_{s}}$. Then $m n=p_{1}^{k_{1}} p_{2}^{k_{2}} \ldots p_{r}^{k_{r}} q_{1}^{l_{1}} q_{2}^{l_{2}} \ldots q_{s}^{l_{s}}$ and any divisor of $m n$ is of the form $d=p_{1}^{a_{1}} p_{2}^{a_{2}} \ldots p_{r}^{a_{r}} q_{1}^{b_{1}} q_{2}^{b_{2}} \ldots q_{s}^{b_{s}}$ where $0 \leq a_{i}<k_{i}$ and $0 \leq b_{i}<l_{i}$.

Let $d_{1}=p_{1}^{a_{1}} p_{2}^{a_{2}} \ldots p_{r}^{a_{r}}, d_{2}=q_{1}^{b_{1}} q_{2}^{b_{2}} \ldots q_{s}^{b_{s}}$. Hence, $d_{1} \mid m$ and $d_{2} \mid n, d=d_{1} d_{2}$, $\operatorname{gcd}=\left(d_{1}, d_{2}\right)=1$ and $d_{1}, d_{2}$ are infact distinct.

Theorem. If f is a multiplicative function and F is defined by $F(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} f(d)$. Then F is also multiplicative.

Proof. Let $m, n$ be relatively prime integers.
Consider,
$F(m n)=\sum_{d \mid m n} f(d)=\sum_{\substack{d_{1}\left|n \\ d_{2}\right| n}} f\left(d_{1} d_{2}\right)$.
Then $F(m n)=\sum_{\substack{d_{1}\left|m \\ d_{2}\right| n}} f\left(d_{1}\right) f\left(d_{2}\right)$.
Since $\operatorname{gcd}\left(d_{1}, d_{2}\right)=1$ we can write

$$
F(m n)=\left(\sum_{d_{1} \mid m} f\left(d_{1}\right)\right)\left(\sum_{d_{2} \mid n} f\left(d_{2}\right)\right) .
$$

Thus $F(m n)=F(m) F(n)$.
e.g. Let $\mathrm{m}=8, \mathrm{n}=3$, then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{F}(8.3) & =\mathrm{f}(1)+\mathrm{f}(2)+\mathrm{f}(3)+\mathrm{f}(4)+\mathrm{f}(6)+\mathrm{f}(8)+\mathrm{f}(12)+\mathrm{f}(24) \\
& =\mathrm{f}(1.1)+\mathrm{f}(2.1)+\mathrm{f}(1.3)+\mathrm{f}(4.1)+\mathrm{f}(2.3)+\mathrm{f}(8.1)+\mathrm{f}(4.3)+\mathrm{f}(8.3) \\
& =\mathrm{f}(1) \cdot(1)+\mathrm{f}(2) \cdot \mathrm{f}(1)+\mathrm{f}(1) \cdot \mathrm{f}(3)+\mathrm{f}(4) \cdot \mathrm{f}(1)+\mathrm{f}(2) \cdot \mathrm{f}(3)+\mathrm{f}(8) \cdot \mathrm{f}(1)+\mathrm{f}(4) \cdot \mathrm{f}(3) \\
& +\mathrm{f}(8) \cdot \mathrm{f}(3) \\
& =(\mathrm{f}(1)+\mathrm{f}(2)+\mathrm{f}(4)+\mathrm{f}(8))(\mathrm{f}(1)+\mathrm{f}(3))=\mathrm{f}(8) \cdot \mathrm{f}(3)
\end{aligned}
$$

Corollary. The function $\tau$ and $\sigma$ are multiplicative.
Proof. We know $f(n)=1$ and $f(n)=n$ are multiplicative. Hence, $\tau(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} 1$ and $\sigma(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} d$ are multiplicative.

### 5.3 The Mobius inversion formula

We begin with

## Definition.(Mobius $\mu$ Function).

For a positive n , define the function $\mu$ by the rules

$$
\mu(n)=\left\{\begin{array}{cll}
1, & \text { if } n=1 & \\
0, & \text { if } p^{2} \mid n & \text { for some prime } \mathrm{p} \\
(-1)^{r} & \text { if } n=p_{1} p_{2} \ldots p_{r} & \text { where } p_{i} s \text { are all distinct }
\end{array}\right\}
$$

e.g. $\mu(1)=1, \mu(2)=-1, \mu(3)=-1, \mu(4)=0, \mu(5)=-1$,

$$
\mu(6)=1, \mu(7)=-1, \mu(8)=0, \mu(9)=0, \mu(10)=1,
$$

$\mu(30)=\mu(2 \times 3 \times 5)=(-1)^{3}=-1$.
Theorem. The function $\mu$ is a multiplicative function.

Proof. Let $\mathrm{a}, \mathrm{b}$ be two relatively prime positive integers.
If p is a prime such that $p^{2} \mid a$ or $p^{2} \mid b$, then $\mu(a)=0$ or $\mu(b)=0$ accordingly.
In this case $p^{2} \mid a b$ and hence, $\mu(a b)=\mu(a) \cdot \mu(b)=0$.
Let both $a$ and $b$ be square free. Since $a$ and $b$ are relatively prime, there is no common prime divisor.

Let $a=p_{1} p_{2} \ldots p_{r}$ and $b=q_{1} q_{2} \ldots q_{s}$ where $p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{r} ; q_{1}, q_{2}, \ldots, q_{s}$ are all distinct.
Hence, ab is square free and $a b=p_{1} p_{2} \ldots p_{r} q_{1} q_{2} \ldots q_{s}$.
So, $\mu(a b)=(-1)^{r+s}=(-1)^{r}(-1)^{s}=\mu(a) \cdot \mu(b)$.
Hence, the result.
Theorem - For each positive integer $n \geq 1$
$\sum_{d \mid n} \mu(d)= \begin{cases}1, & \text { if } n=1 \\ 0, & \text { if } n>1\end{cases}$
where $d$ runs through the positive divisors of $n$.
Proof - If $\mathrm{n}=1$, then $\sum_{d \mid 1} \mu(d)=\mu(1)=1$. Suppose $n>1$, then let $F(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} \mu(d)$.
Let $n=p^{k}$, for some prime p and $k \geq 1$, then

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \sum_{d \mid n} \mu(d)=\mu(1)+\mu(p)+\mu\left(p^{2}\right)+\cdots+\mu\left(p^{K}\right) \\
& =1+(-1)+0+0+\ldots . .+0 \\
& =0 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Let $\mathrm{n}>1$, then there is prime factorization of n namely $n=p_{1}^{k_{1}} p_{2}^{k_{2}} \ldots p_{r}^{k_{r}}, 1 \leq k_{i}, i=1, \ldots, r$.
Since $\mu$ is multiplicative, $F(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} \mu(d)$ is multiplicative.
Consider,

$$
F(n)=F\left(p_{1}^{k_{1}} p_{2}^{k_{2}} \cdots p_{r}^{k_{r}}\right)=F\left(p_{1}^{k_{1}}\right) F\left(p_{2}^{k_{2}}\right) \cdots F\left(p_{r}^{k_{r}}\right)=0
$$

Since $F\left(p^{k}\right)=\sum_{d \mid p^{k}} \mu(d)=0$.
Thus, we have $\sum_{d \mid n} \mu(d)=F(n)=0$ for $\mathrm{n}>1$.

## Theorem. (Mobius Inversion Formula)

Let F and f be two number theoretic functions related by the formula
$F(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} f(d)$. Then
$f(n)=\sum_{d / n} \mu(d) F\left(\frac{n}{d}\right)=\sum_{d / n} \mu\left(\frac{n}{d}\right) F(d)$
Proof. Note that, the two expressions

$$
\sum_{d / n} \mu(d) F\left(\frac{n}{d}\right) \text { and } \sum_{d / n} \mu\left(\frac{n}{d}\right) F(d)
$$

are infact one and the same as one can be obtained by replacing dummy index d by $d^{\prime}=\frac{n}{d} ;$ as d ranges over all positive divisors of n.

Consider

$$
\begin{align*}
& \sum_{d \mid n} \mu(d) F\left(\frac{n}{d}\right)=\sum_{d \mid n}\left(\mu(d) \sum_{c \mid(n / d)} f(c)\right) \\
= & \sum_{d \mid n}\left(\sum_{c \mid(n / d)} \mu(d) f(c)\right) . \tag{1}
\end{align*}
$$

Now, $d \mid n$ and $c \left\lvert\, \frac{n}{d} \Rightarrow d a=n\right.$ and $c b=\frac{n}{d}$, for some integers a and $\mathrm{b} \Rightarrow c \mid n \quad$ and $d \left\lvert\, \frac{n}{c}\right.$.

Using this in Equation (1), we obtain

$$
=\sum_{d \mid n}\left(\sum_{c \mid(n / d)} \mu(d) f(c)\right)=\sum_{c \mid n}\left(\sum_{d \mid n / c)} f(c) \mu(d)\right)=\sum_{c \mid n}\left(f(c) \sum_{d \mid(n / c)} \mu(d)\right)
$$

We know that
$\sum_{\left.d\right|_{\frac{n}{c}} ^{n}} \mu(d)=0$, for all $\frac{n}{c}>1$
$=1, n=c$
Therefore, $\sum_{d \left\lvert\, \frac{n}{c}\right.} \mu(d)=1$.

Hence, we obtain $\sum_{c \mid n}\left(f(c) \sum_{d(n / c)} \mu(d)\right)=\sum_{c=n} f(c) \cdot 1=f(n)$.
Hence, $f(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} \mu(d) F\left(\frac{n}{d}\right)=\sum_{d \mid n} \mu\left(\frac{n}{d}\right) F(d)$
Note. We know $\tau(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} 1, \sigma(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} d$.
Hence, $1=\sum_{d \mid n} \mu\left(\frac{n}{d}\right) \tau(d)$ and $n=\sum_{d \mid n} \mu\left(\frac{n}{d}\right) \sigma(d)$.

Theorem. If F is a multiplicative function and $F(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} f(d)$. Then f is also multiplicative.
Proof. Let $\mathrm{m}, \mathrm{n}$ be relatively prime positive integers.
We know that any divisor d of mn is of the form $d=d_{1} d_{2}$, where $d_{1}\left|m, d_{2}\right| n$ and $\operatorname{gcd}\left(d_{1}, d_{2}\right)=1$.

Invoking inversion formula, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& f(m n)=\sum_{d \mid m n} \mu(d) F\left(\frac{m n}{d}\right) \\
& =\sum_{\substack{d_{1}\left|m, d_{2}\right| n}} \mu\left(d_{1} d_{2}\right) F\left(\frac{m n}{d_{1} d_{2}}\right) \\
& =\sum_{\substack{d_{1}\left|m, d_{2}\right| n}} \mu\left(d_{1}\right) \mu\left(d_{2}\right) F\left(\frac{m}{d_{1}}\right) F\left(\frac{n}{d_{2}}\right) \\
& =\sum_{d_{1} \mid m} \mu\left(d_{1}\right) F\left(\frac{m}{d_{1}}\right) \cdot \sum_{d_{2} \mid n} \mu\left(d_{2}\right) F\left(\frac{n}{d_{2}}\right) \\
& =f(m) f(n)
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus $f$ is multiplicative.
Ex. For each positive integer $n$, show that $\mu(n) \mu(n+1) \mu(n+2) \mu(n+3)=0$.
Sol. Observe that one of the four consecutive integers $n,(n+1),(n+2),(n+3)$ is always divisible by $4=2^{2}$ and hence, not square free. Thus one of $\mu(n), \mu(n+1), \mu(n+2), \mu(n+3)$ is always zero.

### 5.4 Greatest Integer Function

For any real number $x$, the greatest integer function denoted by $[x]$ is defined as the largest integer less than or equal to $x$, that is, $[x]$ is the unique integer satisfying $x-1<[x] \leq x$.

Note that any real number $x$ can be written as, $x=[x]+\theta$, where $0 \leq \theta<1$. Moreover, $[x]=x$ if and only if $x$ is an integer.

Theorem. If n is a positive integer and p is a prime, then the exponent of the highest power of p that divides $n$ ! is $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty}\left[\frac{n}{p^{k}}\right]$ where the series is finite since $\left[\frac{n}{p^{k}}\right]=0$ for $p^{k}>n$.

Proof. Among the first n integers those divisible by prime p are $\mathrm{p}, 2 \mathrm{p}, 3 \mathrm{p}, \ldots$,tp where t is the greatest integer such that $t p \leq n$. In other words $t$ is the largest integer less than or equal to $\frac{n}{p}$, so that $\left(t=\left[\frac{n}{p}\right]\right)$.

Thus there are $\left[\frac{n}{p}\right]$ multiplies of p occurring in n !, namely, $p, 2 p, \ldots,\left[\frac{n}{p}\right] p$.
Further, among the first n integers those divisible by $p^{2}$ are $p^{2}, 2 p^{2}, \ldots, t p^{2}$, where, t is the largest positive integer such that $t p^{2} \leq n$, that is, $t=\left[\frac{n}{p^{2}}\right]$.

Thus there are $\left[\frac{n}{p^{2}}\right]$ multiplies of $p^{2}$ occurring in $\mathrm{n}!$, namely, $p^{2}, 2 p^{2}, \ldots,\left[\frac{n}{p^{2}}\right] p^{2}$. Similarly, those integers which are divisible by $p^{3}$ are precisely $\left[\frac{n}{p^{3}}\right]$ in number and so on.

Observe that highest power of p that divides n is the sum of these integers namely, $\left[\frac{n}{p}\right]+\left[\frac{n}{p^{2}}\right]+\ldots . .=\sum_{k=1}^{\infty}\left[\frac{n}{p^{k}}\right]$.

Note. In view of this result, we can write $n!=\prod_{p \leq n} p^{\sum_{k=\left[\frac{\infty}{\infty}\left[\frac{n}{p^{k}}\right]\right.}}$.
Ex.1.Determine the number of zeros with which the decimal representation of 50 ! terminates.

Solution. To determine the number of zeros, it is enough to observe how may tens divide 50 !.

That is, how many pairs of 5 and 2 divide 50 !.
For that we are to find the exponents of 2 's and 5's that divide 50 !.
The exponent of $2=\sum_{k=1}^{\infty}\left[\frac{50}{2^{k}}\right]$
$=\left[\frac{50}{2}\right]+\left[\frac{50}{2^{2}}\right]+\left[\frac{50}{2^{3}}\right]+\left[\frac{50}{2^{4}}\right]+\left[\frac{50}{2^{5}}\right]$
$=25+12+6+3+1$
$=47$.
And,
Exponent of $5=\sum_{k=1}^{\infty}\left[\frac{50}{5^{k}}\right]$
$=\left[\frac{50}{5}\right]+\left[\frac{50}{5^{2}}\right]$
$=10+2$
$=12$.
Thus there are 12 pairs and hence 12 zeros.
Theorem. If n and r are positive integer with $1 \leq r \leq n$ then the binomial coefficient $\left(\frac{n}{r}\right)=\frac{n!}{(n-r)!r!}$ is also an integer .

Proof. We know that for any two real numbers a and b
$[a+b] \geq[a]+[b]$.
Using this we can write
$\left[\frac{n}{p^{k}}\right] \geq\left[\frac{n-r}{p^{k}}\right]+\left[\frac{r}{p^{k}}\right]$
where p is a prime and k is a positive integer.
Thus $\sum_{k \geq 1}\left[\frac{n}{p^{k}}\right] \geq \sum_{k \geq 1}\left[\frac{n-r}{p^{k}}\right]+\sum_{k \geq 1}\left[\frac{r}{p^{k}}\right]$.

Thus L.H.S. of Equation (1) is the exponent of highest power of p that divides n ! and R.H.S. of (1) is the highest power of p that divides $(n-r)$ ! plus highest power of p that divides $\mathrm{r}!$. Thus r.h.s of (1) is the highest power of p that divides the product $(n-r)!r$.

Thus highest power of p that divides $(n-r)!r$ ! is less than or equal to highest power of p that divides $n!$.

Hence, $\frac{n!}{(n-r)!r!}$ is always an integer.

Corollary. For a positive integer $r$ the product of any $r$ consecutive positive integer is divisible by r !
Proof. Let n be a positive integer such that $\mathrm{n}, \mathrm{n}-1, \mathrm{n}-2, \ldots \ldots, \mathrm{n}-(\mathrm{r}-1)$ are r consecutive positive integers.

Consider,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& n(n-1) \ldots(n-r+1)=\frac{n(n-1) \ldots(n-r+1)(n-r) \ldots 2.1}{(n-r) \ldots 2.1} \\
& =\frac{n!}{(n-r)!} \\
& =\frac{n!}{(n-r)!r!} \times r!
\end{aligned}
$$

Since, $\frac{n!}{(n-r)!r!}$ is an integer, the product of $r$ consecutive positive integer is divisible by $\mathrm{r}!$. e.g. $n(n+1)(n+2)(n+3)$ are divisible by 4 !.

Theorem. Let f and F be number theoretic functions such that $F(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} f(d)$.
Then for any positive integer N ,

$$
\sum_{n=1}^{N} F(n)=\sum_{n=1}^{N} f(k)\left[\frac{N}{k}\right]
$$

Proof. We have $F(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} f(d)$.
Therefore, $\sum_{n=1}^{N} F(n)=\sum_{n=1}^{N} \sum_{d \mid n} f(d)$.

The strategy is to collect terms with equal values of $f(d)$ in the double sum.
Let $k \leq n$ be fixed, then $\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{k})$ appears in $\sum_{d \mid n} f(d)$ if and only if k divides n .
Since each integer divides itself, $f(k)$ appears in the sum at least once for each $k$, $1 \leq k \leq n$. Now in order to find the number of sums $\sum_{d \mid n} f(d)$ in which $\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{k})$ occurs, it is enough to find the number of integers amongst the numbers $1,2,3, \ldots, \mathrm{~N}$ which are divisible by k. These are exactly $\left[\frac{N}{k}\right]$ of them; $k, 2 k, \ldots,\left[\frac{N}{k}\right] k$. Thus for each $k$ such that $1 \leq k \leq N, f(k)$ is a term of the sum $\sum_{d \mid n} f(d)$ for $\left[\frac{N}{k}\right]$ different positive integers less than or equal to $N$. Thus $\sum_{n=1}^{N} \sum_{d \mid n} f(d)=\sum_{k=1}^{N} f(k)\left[\frac{N}{k}\right]$.
e.g., Let us consider $\mathrm{N}=10$.

$$
\begin{array}{rl}
\sum_{n=1}^{10} \sum_{d \mid n} & f(d)=\sum_{d \mid 1} f(d)+\sum_{d \mid 2} f(d)+\cdots+\sum_{d \mid 10} f(d) \\
& =f(1) \\
& +(f(1)+f(2)) \\
& +(f(1)+f(3)) \\
& +(f(1)+f(2)+f(4)) \\
& +(f(1)+f(5)) \\
& +(f(1)+f(2)+f(3)+f(6)) \\
& +(f(1)+f(7)) \\
& +(f(1)+f(2)+f(4)+f(8)) \\
& +(f(1)+f(3)+f(9)) \\
& +(f(1)+f(2)+f(5)+f(10)) \\
& =f(1)(10)+f(2)(5)+f(3)(3)+f(4)(2)+f(5)(2) \\
& +f(6)(1)+f(7)(1)+f(8)(1)+f(9)(1)+f(10)(1) \\
& =f(1)\left[\frac{10}{1}\right]+f(2)\left[\frac{10}{2}\right]+f(3)\left[\frac{10}{3}\right]+f(4)\left[\frac{10}{4}\right]+f(5)\left[\frac{10}{5}\right] \\
& +f(6)\left[\frac{10}{6}\right]+f(7)\left[\frac{10}{7}\right]+f(8)\left[\frac{10}{8}\right]+f(9)\left[\frac{10}{9}\right]+f(10)\left[\frac{10}{10}\right] \\
& \text { Thus } \sum_{n=1}^{N} F(n)=\sum_{k=1}^{N} f(k)\left[\frac{N}{K}\right] .
\end{array}
$$

Corollary. If N is a positive integer then $\sum_{n=1}^{N} \tau(n)=\sum_{k=1}^{N}\left[\frac{N}{k}\right]$
Proof. We know $\tau(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} 1$. Thus by taking $\tau$ for $F$ and $f$ to be the constant function

$$
\begin{aligned}
& f(n)=1 \text { for all } n, \text { we obtain } \\
& \sum_{n=1}^{N} \tau(n)=\sum_{k=1}^{N} 1 \cdot\left[\frac{N}{k}\right]=\sum_{k=1}^{N}\left[\frac{N}{k}\right] .
\end{aligned}
$$

Similarly, we obtain
Corollary. If N is a positive integer then $\sum_{n=1}^{N} \sigma(n)=\sum_{k=1}^{N} k\left[\frac{N}{k}\right]$.
e.g. Consider the case $\mathrm{N}=6$
$\sum_{n=1}^{N} \tau(n)=\sum_{k=1}^{6}\left[\frac{6}{k}\right]=\left[\frac{6}{1}\right]+\left[\frac{6}{2}\right]+\left[\frac{6}{3}\right]+\left[\frac{6}{4}\right]+\left[\frac{6}{5}\right]+\left[\frac{6}{6}\right]$
$=6+3+2+1+1+1$
$=14$
And
$\sum_{n=1}^{6} \sigma(n)=\sum_{k=1}^{6} k \cdot\left[\frac{6}{k}\right]$
$=1(6)+2(3)+3(2)+4(1)+5(1)+6(1)$
$=33$.

## Exercises

1. Find the highest power of 5 dividing 1000! And highest power of 7 that divides 2000 !
2. Determine the number of zeros with which the decimal representation of 1000 ! terminates.
3. For what value of $n$ does $n$ ! terminates in 37 zeros?
Answers: 1. 249,164
4. 249
3.150 .

## Unit-6

## Euler's Generalization of Fermat's theorem

### 6.1 We begin with

## Definition - (Euler phi function)

For $n \geq 1$, let $\phi(n)$ denote the number of positive integers less than or equal to n and relatively prime to $n$.
e.g., $\phi(1)=1, \phi(2)=1, \phi(3)=2, \phi(4)=2, \phi(5)=4, \phi(6)=2, \phi(7)=6$,
$\phi(8)=4, \phi(9)=6, \phi(10)=4, \phi(30)=8$.
Note. For any prime $\mathrm{p}, \phi(p)=p-1$.
Theorem. If p is a prime and $k>0$ then $\phi\left(p^{k}\right)=p^{k}-p^{k-1}=p^{k}\left(1-\frac{1}{p}\right)$.
Proof. Since $\operatorname{gcd}\left(n, p^{k}\right)=1$ if and only if $p \nmid n$. Amongst the integers $1,2, \ldots, p^{k}$ those divisible by p are $p, 2 p, 3 p, \ldots,\left(p^{k-1}\right) p$. Thus the number of positive integers less than or equal to $p^{k}$ that are divisible by p are $p^{\mathrm{k}-1}$.
Therefore, number of positive integers less than $p^{\mathrm{k}}$ that are relatively prime to $p^{\mathrm{k}}$ is

$$
\phi\left(p^{k}\right)=p^{k}-p^{k-1}=p^{k}\left(1-\frac{1}{p}\right)
$$

Lemma. Given integers $a, b, c, \operatorname{gcd}(a, b c)=1$ if and only if $\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)=1$ and $\operatorname{gcd}(a, c)=1$
Proof. Suppose $\operatorname{gcd}(a, b c)=1$. Let $d=\operatorname{gcd}(a, b)$, then $d \mid a$ and $d \mid b$, so that $d|a, d| b c$ and hence, $d \leq \operatorname{gcd}(a, b c)=1$. Therefore $\mathrm{d}=1 . \operatorname{Similarly} \operatorname{gcd}(a, c)=1$.

Conversely, suppose that $\operatorname{gcd}(a, c)=1$.
Let $d_{1}=\operatorname{gcd}(a, b c)$. Let if possible $d_{l}>1$ it must have prime factor p . Since p is prime, $d_{1}|b c \Rightarrow p| b c \Rightarrow p \mid b$ or $p \mid c$. Suppose $p \mid b$. Further, $p \mid d_{1}$ and $d_{1}|a \Rightarrow p| a$ consequently, $p \leq \operatorname{gcd}(a, b)$ which is absurd. On the other hand if we take $p \mid c$, then $p \leq \operatorname{gcd}(a, c)$ is also a contradiction.

Hence, $\operatorname{gcd}(a, b c)=1$.
Theorem. The function $\phi$ is a multiplicative function.

Proof. Let $\mathrm{m}, \mathrm{n}$ are relatively prime integers. Since $\phi(1)=1$ the result holds trivially when either $\mathrm{m}=1$ or $\mathrm{n}=1$. Let $\mathrm{m}>1$ and $\mathrm{n}>1$.

Let us arrange $\mathrm{m}, \mathrm{n}$ integers form 1 to mn as follows
$\left.\begin{array}{lclccc}1 & 2 & \ldots & r & \ldots & m \\ m+1 & m+2 & \ldots & m+r & \ldots & 2 m \\ 2 m+1 & 2 m+2 & \ldots & 2 m+r & \ldots & 3 m \\ (n-1) m+1 & (n-1) & m+2 & \ldots & (n-1) m+r & \ldots\end{array}\right) n m$.

Now, $\phi(m n)$ is equal to the number of entries in the array which are relatively prime to mn .
We know that a number is relatively prime to mn if and only if it is relatively prime to both m and n . We know that, $\operatorname{gcd}(q m+r, m)=\operatorname{gcd}(m, r)$, that is, if an element in the first row is relatively prime to $m$, then the whole column corresponding to that element is relatively prime to m . Therefore as many as $\phi(m)$ columns are there each integer of which is relatively prime to m .
Consider the entries in the $\mathrm{r}^{\text {th }}$ column
$\mathrm{r}, \mathrm{m}+\mathrm{r}, 2 \mathrm{~m}+\mathrm{r}, \ldots,(\mathrm{n}-1) \mathrm{m}+\mathrm{r}$.
Let $r$ be such that $\operatorname{gcd}(m, r)=1$.
Since,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& k m+r \equiv j m+r(\bmod n),(0 \leq j<k<n) \\
& \Rightarrow k m \equiv j m(\bmod n) \\
& \Rightarrow k \equiv j(\bmod n) \\
& \Rightarrow n \mid k-j .
\end{aligned}
$$

which is absurd, no two entries in the rth column are congruent to one another modulo n . Therefore, $r, m+r, 2 m+r, \ldots,(n-1) m+r$ are congruent to $0,1,2, \ldots, \mathrm{n}-1$ modulo n in some order.

Thus the rth column contains exactly as many integers relatively prime to n as the number of integers $0,1,2, \ldots, \mathrm{n}-1$ which are relatively prime to n . Thus there are exactly $\phi(n)$ integers in the $\mathrm{r}^{\text {th }}$ column that are relatively prime to n . Therefore, each of the $\phi(m)$ columns contain $\phi(n)$ integers which are relatively prime to $n$. Hence, there are $\phi(m) \phi(n)$ integers which are relatively prime to both $m$ and $n$

Hence, $\phi(m n)=\phi(m) \phi(n)$.Thus, $\phi$ is multiplicative function.

Theorem. If the integer $n>1$ has the prime factorization $n=p_{1}^{k_{1}} p_{2}^{k_{2}} \cdots p_{r}^{k_{r}}$, then

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \phi(n)=\left(p_{1}^{k_{1}}-p_{1}^{k_{1}-1}\right)\left(p_{2}^{k_{2}}-p_{2}^{k_{2}-1}\right) \ldots\left(p_{r}^{k_{r}}-p_{r}^{k_{r}-1}\right) \\
& =n\left(1-\frac{1}{p_{1}}\right)\left(1-\frac{1}{p_{2}}\right) \cdots\left(1-\frac{1}{p_{r}}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Proof. We shall prove this theorem by induction on r . For $r=1$, we have $n=p_{1}^{k_{1}}$ and

$$
\phi(n)=\phi\left(p_{1}^{k_{1}}\right)=p_{1}^{k_{1}}-p_{1}^{k_{1}-1}=p_{1}^{k_{1}}\left(1-\frac{1}{p_{1}}\right)=n\left(1-\frac{1}{p_{1}}\right) .
$$

Let the result hold for $r=s$.
Consider,
$n=p_{1}^{k_{1}} \ldots \quad p_{s}^{k_{s}} p_{s+1}^{k_{s+1}}$.
Since $\operatorname{gcd}\left(p_{1}^{k_{1}} p_{2}^{k_{2}} \cdots p_{s}^{k_{s}}, p_{s+1}^{k_{s+1}}\right)=1$, we can write

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \phi(n)=\phi\left(p_{1}^{k_{1}} \ldots p_{s}^{k_{s}} p_{s+1}^{k_{s+1}}\right) \\
& =\phi\left(p_{1}^{k_{1}} \ldots p_{s}^{k_{s}}\right) \phi\left(p_{s+1}^{k_{s+1}}\right) \quad(\text { Since } \phi \text { is multiplicative }) \\
& =\left(p_{1}^{k_{1}}-p_{1}^{k_{1}-1}\right) \ldots\left(p_{s}^{k_{s}}-p_{s}^{k_{s-1}}\right)\left(p_{s+1}^{k_{s+1}}-p_{s+1}^{k_{s+1}-1}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence, the result holds for $r=s+1$ whenever it holds for $r=s$. Therefore by principle of induction the result holds for any r .
e.g. Let $\mathrm{n}=360$ then $n=2^{3} 3^{2} .5$, so that

$$
\phi(360)=360\left(1-\frac{1}{2}\right)\left(1-\frac{1}{3}\right)\left(1-\frac{1}{5}\right)=96 .
$$

Theorem. For $n>2, \phi(n)$ is an even integer .
Proof. Suppose n is a power of 2 . Let $n=2^{k}$, for some positive integer $k>1$.
Then, $\quad \phi(n)=\phi\left(2^{k}\right)=2^{k}\left(1-\frac{1}{2}\right)=2^{k-1} \quad$ which is even.
Suppose n is not power of 2 an odd integer. Then there is an odd prime p that divides n .
Let $n=p^{k} . m$ where $p \nmid m$ and $k \geq 1$. Since $p \nmid m, \operatorname{gcd}\left(p^{k}, m\right)=1$ and as $\phi$ is multiplicative $\phi(n)=\phi\left(p^{k} m\right)=\phi\left(p^{k}\right) \phi(m)=p^{k-1}(p-1) \phi(m)$.

Since p is odd prime, $\mathrm{p}-1$ is even,so $\phi(n)$ is even.

### 6.2 Euler's Theorem

Lemma - Let $n>1$ and $\operatorname{gcd}(a, n)=1$.If $a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{\phi(n)}$ are positive integers less than n and relatively prime to n , then $a a_{1}, a a_{2}, \ldots, a a_{\phi(n)}$ are congruent modulo n to $a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{\phi(n)}$ in some order.

Proof.Claim : No two integers $a a_{1}, a a_{2}, \ldots, a a_{\phi(n)}$ are congruent modulo n.
Let if possible $a a_{i} \equiv a a_{j}(\bmod n), 1 \leq i<j \leq \phi(n)$, then as $\operatorname{gcd}(a, n)=1$, we have $a_{i}=a_{j}(\bmod n) \Rightarrow n \mid a_{i}-a_{j}$
which is absurd.
Now, $\operatorname{gcd}\left(a_{i}, n\right)=1$ and $\operatorname{gcd}(a, n)=1,1 \leq i \leq \phi(n)$ implies that $\operatorname{gcd}\left(a a_{i}, n\right)=1$ for each $i=1,2, \ldots, \phi(n)$. Thus for any fixed $1 \leq i \leq \phi(n), a a_{i}$ is congruent modulo $n$ to unique integer $b, 1 \leq b<n$. Hence, $\operatorname{gcd}(b, n)=\operatorname{gcd}\left(a a_{i}, n\right)=1$. Therefore, b must be one of $a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{\phi(n)}$.

Theorem (Euler's Theorem). Let $n \geq 1$ and $\operatorname{gcd}(a, n)=1$, then $a^{\phi(n)} \equiv 1(\bmod n)$.
Proof. Without loss of generality we can take $\mathrm{n}>1$. Let $a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{\phi(n)}$ be the positive integers less than n and relatively prime to n . Then as $\operatorname{gcd}(a, n)=1, a a_{1}, a a_{2}, \ldots, a a_{\phi(n)}$ are congruent to $a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{\phi(n)}$ in some order .

Let $a_{1}^{\prime}, a_{2}^{\prime}, \ldots, a_{\phi(n)}^{\prime}$ be a rearrangement of $a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{\phi(n)}$ such that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& a a_{1} \equiv a_{1}^{\prime}(\bmod n) \\
& a a_{2} \equiv a_{2}^{\prime}(\bmod n) \\
& \vdots \\
& a a_{\phi(n)} \equiv a_{\phi(n)}^{\prime}(\bmod n)
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus, $\left(a a_{1}\right)\left(a a_{2}\right) \cdots\left(a a_{\phi(n)}\right) \equiv a_{1}^{\prime} a_{2}^{\prime} \cdots a_{\phi(n)}^{\prime}(\bmod n)$, that is, $\left(a a_{1}\right) \ldots\left(a a_{\phi(n)}\right)$

$$
\equiv a_{1} a_{2} \ldots a_{\phi(n)}(\bmod n) .
$$

Therefore, $a^{\phi(n)} a_{1} a_{2} \ldots a_{\phi(n)} \equiv a_{1} a_{2} \ldots a_{\phi(n)}(\bmod n)$.
Since each $a_{i}$ is relatively prime to n for $i=1,2, \ldots, \phi(n)$, we can write
$a^{\phi(n)} \equiv 1(\bmod n)$.
Note. Note that, Euler's theorem is Euler's generalization of Fermat's theorem.
Corollary. If $p$ is a prime and $p \nmid a$, then $a^{p-1} \equiv 1(\bmod p)$.
Ex. 1 Find last two digits in the decimal representation of $3^{256}$.
Solution. We have to find smallest positive integer to which $3^{256}$ is congruent modulo 100 . Note that $\operatorname{gcd}(3,100)=1$ and $\phi(100)=100\left(1-\frac{1}{2}\right)\left(1-\frac{1}{5}\right)=40$. so that by Euler's theorem $3^{\phi(100)} \equiv 1(\bmod 100)$ that is, $3^{40} \equiv 1(\bmod 100)$.

Thus, $3^{240}=\left(3^{40}\right)^{6} \equiv 1(\bmod 100)$.
Now, $3^{4} \equiv 81 \equiv(-19)(\bmod 100) \Rightarrow 3^{8} \equiv\left(3^{4}\right)^{2} \equiv(-19)^{2}(\bmod 100) \Rightarrow 3^{8} \equiv(-39)(\bmod 100)$.
Thus $3^{16} \equiv(-39)^{2} \equiv 21(\bmod 100)$.
Therefore, $3^{256}=3^{240} \cdot 3^{16} \equiv 1 \cdot 21(\bmod 100)$.
Hence, the last two digits in the decimal representation of $3^{256}$ are 21.
Ex.2.Using Euler's theorem, prove that, for any integer $a, a^{37} \equiv a(\bmod 1729)$.
Solution. Observe that $1729=7 \cdot 13 \cdot 19$. Let $a$ be an integer such that, $\operatorname{gcd}(a, 1729)=1$, then $\operatorname{gcd}(a, 7)=1, \operatorname{gcd}(a, 13)=1, \operatorname{gcd}(a, 19)=1$ and so $a^{6} \equiv 1(\bmod 7), a^{12} \equiv 1(\bmod 13), a^{18} \equiv 1(\bmod 19)$.

Thus, $a^{l c m(6,12,18)} \equiv 1(\bmod 7 \cdot 13 \cdot 19) \Rightarrow a^{36} \equiv 1(\bmod 1729) \Rightarrow a^{37} \equiv a(\bmod 1729)$.
However, if $1729 \mid a$, there is nothing to prove.
Ex.3. If m and n are relatively prime positive integers, then $m^{\phi(n)}+n^{\phi(m)} 1(\bmod m n)$
Hence deduce, $p^{q-1}+q^{p-1} \equiv 1(\bmod p q)$ where p and q are distinct primes.
Solution. Since $\operatorname{gcd}(m, n)=1$ we have $m^{\phi(n)} \equiv 1(\bmod m)$ and $n^{\phi(m)} \equiv 1(\bmod n)$ also $m^{\phi(n)} \equiv 0(\bmod m) ; n^{\phi(m)} \equiv 0(\bmod n)$.

Thus, $m^{\phi(n)}+n^{\phi(m)} \equiv 1(\bmod n)$ and $m^{\phi(n)}+n^{\phi(m)} \equiv 1(\bmod m)$.
Hence, $m^{\phi(n)}+n^{\phi(m)} \equiv 1(\bmod m n)$.
For distinct primes p and q we have
$p^{\phi(q)}+q^{\phi(p)} \equiv 1(\bmod p q)$.
That is, $p^{q-1}+q^{p-1} \equiv 1(\bmod p q)$.

## Exercises

1. Use Euler's theorem to establish the following
a) For any integer $a, a^{13} \equiv a(\bmod 2730)$
b) For any integer $a, a^{33} \equiv a(\bmod 4080)$.
2. Find the unit's digit of $3^{100}$ using Euler's theorem.(Ans. 1)

### 6.3 Some properties of the $\mathbf{P h i}$ - function :

Theorem. (Gauss) For each positive integer $n \geq 1, n=\sum_{d \mid n} \phi(d)$
The sum being extended over all positive divisors of $n$.
Proof. The integers between 1 and n can be separated into classes as follows:
If d is a divisor of n we put the integer m in the class $S_{d} \operatorname{provided~} \operatorname{gcd}(m, n)=d$.
In symbols, $S_{d}=\{m: \operatorname{gcd}(m, n)=d ; 1 \leq m \leq n\}$.
Since $\operatorname{gcd}(m, n)=d$, we have, $\operatorname{gcd}\left(\frac{m}{d}, \frac{n}{d}\right)=1$.
Therefore, number of positive integers in $S_{d}$ is precisely $\phi\left(\frac{n}{d}\right)$.
Further, each integer between 1 and n belongs to precisely one $S_{d}$.
Therefore,
$n=\sum_{d \mid n}\left|S_{d}\right|=\sum_{d \mid n} \phi\left(\frac{n}{d}\right)$.
But as ' $d$ ' runs over all the positive divisors of $n$, so does $n / d$, hence, we can write $n=\sum_{d \mid n} \phi(d)$.
e.g. Let $\mathrm{n}=10$, the integers relatively prime to 10 are $1,3,7,9$ and divisors of 10 are $1,2,5,10$.

Consider
$S_{1}=\{1,3,7,9\}, S_{2}=\{2,4,6,8\}, S_{5}=\{5\}, S_{10}=\{10\}$ and $\phi(10)=4, \phi(5)=4, \phi(2)=1, \phi(1)=1$.
Observe that $\phi(10)=\phi(10 / 1)=\left|S_{1}\right|=4, \phi(5)=\phi(10 / 2)=\left|S_{2}\right|=4, \phi(2)=\phi(10 / 5)=\left|S_{5}\right|=1$,
$\phi(1)=\phi(10 / 10)=\left|S_{10}\right|=1$. Therefore,
$\sum_{d \mid 10} \phi(d)=\phi(1)+\phi(2)+\phi(5)+\phi(10)=1+1+4+4=10$.
Lemma. For integers $a, n, \operatorname{gcd}(a, n)=1$ if and only of $\operatorname{gcd}(n-a, n)=1$.
Proof. Suppose $\operatorname{gcd}(a, n)=1$, and $d=\operatorname{gcd}(n-a, n) \Rightarrow d|n-a, d| n$, hence,
$d|n, d| n-(n-a)=a \Rightarrow d \leq \operatorname{gcd}(a, n)=1 \Rightarrow d=1$. That is, $\operatorname{gcd}(n-a, n)=1$. On the other hand, suppose $\operatorname{gcd}(n-a, n)=1$ and $d=\operatorname{gcd}(a, n)$, then
$d|a, d| n \Rightarrow d|n-a, d| n \Rightarrow d \leq \operatorname{gcd}(n-a, n)=1 \Rightarrow d=1$. Thus $\operatorname{gcd}(a, n)=1$.
Let us fix $n=15$, then the integers relatively prime to 15 are $1,2,4,7,8,11,13,14$.
Then $15-1=14,15-2=13,15-4=11,15-7=8,15-8=7,15-11=4,15-13=2,15-14=1$ are also relatively prime to 15 and is indeed a rearrangement of all integers relatively to 15 . Thus we can write
$1+2+4+7+8+11+13+14=$
$(15-1)+(15-2)+(15-4)+(15-7)+(15-8)+(15-11)+(15-13)+(15-14)$
Thus
$1+2+4+7+8+11+13+14=8 \times 15-(1+2+4+7+8+11+13+14)$
That is
$2(1+2+4+7+8+11+13+14)=8 \times 15$,
Or
$1+2+4+7+8+11+13+14=\frac{\phi(15) \times 15}{2}$.
Thus, we have
Theorem. For $n>1$, the sum of the positive integers less than $n$ and relatively prime to $n$ is $\frac{1}{2} n \phi(n)$.

Proof. Let $a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{\phi(n)}$ be the positive integers less than $n$ and relatively prime to $n$.
Since, $\operatorname{gcd}(a, n)=1$ if and only if $\operatorname{gcd}(a-n, n)=1$, the numbers $n-a_{1}, n-a_{2}, \ldots, n-a_{\phi(n)}$ are equal in some order to $a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{\phi(n)}$. Thus

$$
\begin{aligned}
& a_{1}+a_{2}+\cdots+a_{\phi(n)}=\left(n-a_{1}\right)+\left(n-a_{2}\right)+\cdots+\left(n-a_{\phi(n)}\right) \\
& =n \phi(n)-\left(a_{1}+a_{2}+\cdots+a_{\phi(n)}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence, $2\left(a_{1}+a+\cdots+a_{\phi(n)}\right)=n \phi(n)$ and the result follows.
Theorem.For any integer $n \phi(n)=n \sum_{d \mid n} \frac{\mu(d)}{d}$.
Proof. We know
$F(n)=n=\sum_{d \mid n} \phi(d)$.
By inversion formula, we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \phi(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} \mu(d) F\left(\frac{n}{d}\right) \\
& =\sum_{d \mid n} \mu(d) \frac{n}{d} \\
& =\sum_{d \mid n} n \frac{\mu(d)}{d} \\
& =n \sum_{d \mid n} \frac{\mu(d)}{d} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Let us illustrate this for $n=10$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 10 \sum_{d \mid n} \frac{\mu(d)}{d}=10\left[\mu(1)+\frac{\mu(2)}{2}+\frac{\mu(5)}{5}+\frac{\mu(10)}{10}\right] \\
& =10\left[1+\frac{(-1)}{2}+\frac{(-1)}{5}+\frac{(-1)^{2}}{10}\right] \\
& =10\left[1-\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{5}+\frac{1}{10}\right] \\
& =10 \frac{2}{5}=4=\phi(10) .
\end{aligned}
$$

## Unit-7

## Primitive Roots and Indices

7.1 Let us begin with the definition of order of an integer modulo $n$.

Definition. Let $n>1$ and $a$ be an integer such that $\operatorname{gcd}(a, n)=1$. Then the smallest positive integer k such that $a^{k} \equiv 1(\bmod n)$ is called order of $a$ modulo $n$.
e.g. - 1) Let $a=2$ and $n=5$. Here $2^{4} \equiv 1(\bmod 5)$, then order of 2 modulo 5 is 4 .
2) Let $a=3$ and $n=5$. Here $3^{4} \equiv 1(\bmod 5)$, then order of 3 modulo 5 is 4 .
3) Let $a=2$ and $n=7$. Here $2^{3} \equiv 1(\bmod 7)$, then order of 2 modulo 7 is 2 .

Notes. 1. If $a \equiv b(\bmod n)$ then order of $a$ modulo n is same as order of b modulo n .
2. If $\operatorname{gcd}(a, n)>1$ then $a x \equiv 1(\bmod n)$ has no solution. Then we can not talk about order $a$ modulo n . Therefore, whenever we talk order of $a$ modulo n it is assumed that $\operatorname{gcd}(a, n)=1$.

Theorem - Let the integer $a$ have order k modulo n , then $a^{h} \equiv 1(\bmod n)$ if and only if $k \mid h$ in particular $k \mid \phi(n)$.

Proof. Let $h$ be any positive integer such that $a^{h} \equiv 1(\bmod n)$.
Since k is order of $a$ modulo n we have $a^{k} \equiv 1(\bmod n)$.
By division algorithm there exist integers q and r such that $h=k q+r$ where $0 \leq r<k$.
Hence, $a^{h}=a^{q k+r}=\left(a^{k}\right)^{q} a^{r} \equiv(1)^{q} a^{r} \equiv a^{r}(\bmod n)$. Thus $a^{r} \equiv a^{h}(\bmod n)$ this together with $a^{h} \equiv 1(\bmod n)$ gives us $a^{r} \equiv 1(\bmod n)$.If $0<r<k$, minimality of k is contradicted. Hence, $r=0$. Thus $h=k q$ or $k \mid h$.

Conversely, if $k \mid h$ then there is an integer q such that $k q=h$ and

$$
a^{k} \equiv 1(\bmod n) \Rightarrow\left(a^{k}\right)^{q} \equiv 1^{q}(\bmod n) \Rightarrow a^{h}=a^{k q} \equiv 1(\bmod n)
$$

Since $a^{\phi(n)} \equiv 1(\bmod n)$ by Euler's theorem, we have, $k \mid \phi(n)$.
Theorem. If the integer $a$ has order k modulo n then $a^{i} \equiv a^{j}(\bmod n)$ iff $i \equiv j(\bmod k)$.

Proof. With no loss of generality we can take $i>j$ Since $a^{i} \equiv a^{j}(\bmod n)$ and $\operatorname{gcd}(a, n)=1$ we have, $a^{i-j} \equiv 1(\bmod n)$.

Since $a$ has order k modulo $\mathrm{n}, k \mid i-j$ i.e. $i \equiv j(\bmod k)$.
Conversely, if $i \equiv j(\bmod k)$ then $k \mid i-j$ therefore $i=j+k q$ for some integer q . Then, $a^{i}=a^{j+q k}=a^{j}\left(a^{k}\right)^{q} \equiv a^{j} \cdot 1(\bmod n) \Rightarrow a^{i} \equiv a^{j}(\bmod n)$.

Thus, $a^{i} \equiv a^{j}(\bmod n)$.
Corollary. If $a$ has order k modulo n then integers $a, a^{2}, \ldots, a^{k}$ are incongruent modulo n .
Proof. Let if possible $a^{i} \equiv a^{j}(\bmod n)$ with $1 \leq j<i \leq k$ then $i \equiv j(\bmod k)$, that is, $k \mid i-j$ which is absurd.

Theorem. If the integer $a$ has order k modulo n and $\mathrm{h}>0$ then $a^{h}$ has order $\mathrm{k} / \operatorname{gcd}(h, k)$ modulo n .

Proof. Let $d=\operatorname{gcd}(h, k)$ then $\mathrm{d} \mid \mathrm{h}$ and $\mathrm{d} \mid \mathrm{k}$. Therefore, there exist integers $h_{1}$ and $k_{1}$ such that $d h_{1}=h$ and $d k_{1}=k$ with $\operatorname{gcd}\left(h_{1}, k_{1}\right)=1$.

Consider, $\left(a^{h}\right)^{h_{1}}=a^{h k_{1}}=a^{\left(h_{1} d\right)(k / d)}=a^{h_{1} k}=\left(a^{k}\right)^{h_{1}} \equiv 1^{h_{1}} \equiv 1(\bmod n)$.
Thus, if r is the order $a^{h}$ modulo n , then $r \mid k_{1}$.
On the other hand we have,
$a^{h r}=\left(a^{h}\right)^{r} \equiv 1(\bmod n)$
$\left(a^{h}\right)^{r}=a^{h r} \equiv 1(\bmod n)$.
Since the integer $a$ has order k modulo $\mathrm{n}, a^{k} \equiv 1(\bmod n)$. Therefore, we have $k \mid h r$.
Hence, $k\left|h r \Rightarrow k_{1} d\right| d h_{1} r \Rightarrow k_{1} \mid h_{1} r$. Since $\operatorname{gcd}\left(h_{1}, k_{1}\right)=1$ by Euclid's lemma $k_{1} \mid r$.
Thus $k_{1} \mid r$ Therefore, $r=k_{1}=k / d=k / \operatorname{gcd}(h, k)$.
Corollary. Let $a$ have order k modulo n . Then $a^{h}$ also has order k if and only if $\operatorname{gcd}(h, k)=1$.

Definition (Primitive Root). Let $\mathrm{n}>1$ and $a$ be an integer such that $\operatorname{gcd}(a, n)=1$ Then $a$ is primitive root of n if order of $a$ modulo n is $\phi(n)$.
e.g. 1) 2 and 3 are primitive roots of 5
2) 3 and 5 are primitive root of 7 .

Let us consider $n=7$

| Integer | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Order | 1 | 3 | 6 | 3 | 6 | 2 |

Now for $n=11$

| Integer | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Order | 1 | 10 | 5 | 5 | 5 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 5 | 2 |

Looking at the table, 3,6 are primitive roots of 7 and 2, 6, 7, 8 are primitive roots of 11 .
Ex. 1 Show that if $F_{n}=2^{2^{n}}+1,(n>1)$ is a prime then 2 is not a primitive root of $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}}$.
Solution. Consider

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 2^{2^{n+1}}-1=\left(2^{2^{n}}\right)^{2}-1 \\
& =\left(2^{2^{n}}+1\right)\left(2^{2^{n}}-1\right) \\
& =F_{n}\left(2^{2^{n}}-1\right) \\
& \Rightarrow 2^{2^{n+1}} \equiv 1\left(\bmod F_{n}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus order of 2 modulo $F_{n}$ can not exceed $2^{n+1}$. Since $F_{n}$ is prime
$\phi\left(F_{n}\right)=F_{n}-1=2^{2^{n}}$
Since $2^{n+1}<2^{2^{n}}, 2$ is not a primitive root of $n$.
Theorem. Let $\operatorname{gcd}(a, n)=1$ and let $a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{\phi(n)}$ be the positive integers less than n and relatively prime to n . If $a$ is a primitive root of n , then $a, a^{2}, \ldots, a^{\phi(n)}$ are congruent modulo n to $a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{\phi(n)}$ in some order.

Proof. Since $\operatorname{gcd}(a, n)=1, a, a^{2}, \ldots, a^{\phi(n)}$ are relatively prime to n . It remains to show that $a, a^{2}, \ldots, a^{\phi(n)}$ are incongruent modulo n .

Let if possible, $a^{i} \equiv a^{j}(\bmod n), \Rightarrow i \equiv j(\bmod \phi(n))$
where $1 \leq j<i \leq \phi(n)$ then $\phi(n) \mid i-j$, which is impossible.

Now for fixed $k, 1 \leq k \leq \phi(n)$, there is a positive integer $r, r<n$ such that $a^{k} \equiv r(\bmod n)$ and
$\operatorname{gcd}\left(a^{k}, n\right)=\operatorname{gcd}(r, n)=1$. So that r is positive integer less than n , relatively prime to n . Hence r must be one of $a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{\phi(n)}$. Since $a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{\phi(n)}$ are incongruent modulo n , $a, a^{2}, \ldots, a^{\phi(n)}$ are congruent to $a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{\phi(n)}$ in some order.

Corollary. If n has a primitive root then it has exactly $\phi(\phi(n))$ of them.
Proof. Suppose that $a$ is a primitive root of $n$. Then $a$ must be congruent to one of $a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{\phi(n)}$ where $a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{\phi(n)}$ are positive integers less than n relatively prime to n .

We know that $a, a^{2}, \ldots, a^{\phi(n)}$ are congruent modulo n to $a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots \ldots a_{\phi(n)}$ in some order. Further number $a^{k}, 1 \leq k \leq \phi(n)$ has order $\phi(n)$ if $\operatorname{gcd}(k, \phi(n))=1$. Hence, there are exactly $\phi(\phi(n))$ primitive roots of n .

Ex.2. Find the order of the integers 2, 3 and 5 modulo 17.
Solution. Consider the factors $2,4,8,16$ of $\phi(17)=16$. Now $2^{2} \not \equiv 1(\bmod 17), 2^{4} \equiv 1(\bmod 17)$ but $2^{8} \equiv 1(\bmod 17)$.Therefore, order of 2 modulo 17 is 8 . Hence, 2 is not primitive root of 17.Next, $3^{2} \not \equiv 1(\bmod 17), 3^{4} \equiv 1(\bmod 17), 3^{8} \equiv 1(\bmod 17)$ but $3^{16} \equiv 1(\bmod 17)$. Therefore, order of 3 modulo 17 is $\phi(17)=16$. Hence, 3 is a primitive root of 17. Further, $5^{2} \equiv 1(\bmod 17), 5^{4} \equiv 1(\bmod 17), 5^{8} \equiv 1(\bmod 17)$ but $5^{16} \equiv 1(\bmod 17)$. Hence, 5 is a primitive root of 17 .

Ex.3. Prove that $\phi\left(2^{n}-1\right)$ is multiple of $n$ for any $n>1$.
Solution. Since, $2^{n} \equiv 1\left(\bmod 2^{n}-1\right)$, therefore 2 has order n modulo $2^{n}-1$.
Therefore, $n \mid \phi\left(2^{n}-1\right)$
Ex.4. If p is a composite number such that $2^{p}-1$ is prime then p is a pseudoprime.
Solution. Since $2^{p} \equiv 1\left(\bmod 2^{p}-1\right)$ therefore 2 has order p modulo $2^{p-1}$.
Therefore, $p \mid \phi\left(2^{p}-1\right)=2^{p}-2$.Hence, p is pseudoprime.
Ex.5. Assume that order of $a$ modulo n is h and the order of b modulo n is k . Show that order of ab modulo n divides hk . In particular, if $\operatorname{gcd}(h, k)=1$, then order of $a b$ is hk.

Solution. Given that $a^{h} \equiv 1(\bmod n)$ and $b^{k} \equiv 1(\bmod n)$. Thus, $(a b)^{h k} \equiv 1(\bmod n)$.

Thus, order of $a b$ modulo n divides hk. Note that, $a b^{1 c m(h, k)} \equiv 1(\bmod n)$. Therefore, if $\operatorname{gcd}(h, k)=1$, then $\operatorname{lcm}(h, k)=h k$ and hence, order of ab is hk.

Ex.6. The odd prime divisors of the integer $n^{2}+1$ are of the form $4 k+1$
Solution. Let p be an odd prime divisor of $n^{2}+1$ then $n^{2}+1 \equiv 0(\bmod p)$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \Rightarrow n^{2} \equiv(-1)(\bmod p) \\
& \Rightarrow n^{4} \equiv 1(\bmod p) \\
& \Rightarrow 4 \mid \phi(p)=p-1 \\
& \Rightarrow p=4 k+1 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Ex. 7 The odd prime divisors of the integers $\left(n^{4}+1\right)$ are of the form $8 k+1$.
Solution. Let p be a prime divisors of $n^{4}+1$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
& n^{4}+1 \equiv 0(\bmod P) \\
& n^{4} \equiv(-1)(\bmod P) \\
& n^{8} \equiv(-1)^{2}(\bmod P) \\
& n^{8} \equiv 1(\bmod P) \\
& 8 \mid \phi(p)=p-1 \\
& \Rightarrow p=8 k+1 .
\end{aligned}
$$

## Exercises

1. Find the order of the integers 2,3 and 5
a) modulo 19
b) modulo 23 .
2. Find orders of all the positive integers less 13 , which of them are primitive roots of 13 .

### 7.2 Primitive Roots for Primes

Theorem. (Lagrange) If p is a prime and, $f(x)=a_{n} x^{n}+a_{n-1} x^{n-1}+\ldots .+a_{1} x+a_{0}$ $\left(a_{n} \not \equiv 0(\bmod p)\right)$ is a polynomial of degree $n \geq 1$ with integral coefficients then the congruence $f(x) \equiv 0(\bmod p)$ has at most $n$ incongruent solutions modulo p .

Proof. We shall prove this theorem by induction on n . Let $\mathrm{n}=1$ then $f(x)=a_{1} x+a_{0}$.
Since $\operatorname{gcd}\left(a_{1}, p\right)=1$ the linear congruence $a_{1} x \equiv-a_{0}(\bmod p)$ has a unique solution.

Hence, $a_{1} x+a_{0} \equiv 0(\bmod p)$ has unique solution for $\mathrm{n}=1$.
Suppose that the result holds for $\mathrm{n}=\mathrm{k}-1$. Let $f(x)$ be a polynomial of degree k .
If $f(x) \equiv 0(\bmod p)$ has no solution then there is nothing to prove.
Let $f(x) \equiv 0(\bmod p)$ have a solution $a$. By division algorithm we have
$f(x)=(x-a) g(x)+r$, where r is constant. i.e. r is an integer and $\operatorname{deg}(g(x))=k-1$.
Since $a$ is a solution of $f(x) \equiv 0(\bmod p)$, we have $f(a) \equiv 0(\bmod p)$.
Hence, $0 \equiv f(a)=(a-a) g(a)+r \equiv r(\bmod p)$
Thus, $r \equiv 0(\bmod p)$.
Hence, $f(x) \equiv(x-a) g(x)(\bmod p)$.
Let b be any other solution of $f(x) \equiv 0(\bmod p)$ other than $a$.
Then, $0 \equiv f(b) \equiv(b-a) g(b)(\bmod p)$.
Since, $(b-a) \not \equiv 0(\bmod p)$, we have $g(b) \equiv 0(\bmod p)$.
Thus any solutions of $f(x) \equiv 0(\bmod p)$ other than $a$ is a solution of $g(x) \equiv 0(\bmod p)$.
Since $g(x)$ is of degree $k-1, g(x) \equiv 0(\bmod p)$ can have at most $\mathrm{k}-1$ zeros incongruent modulo p .

Thus $f(x) \equiv 0(\bmod p)$ can have at most $(k-1)+1=k$ incongruent solutions modulo p .
Hence, the result follows by principle of induction.
Corollary. If p is a prime number and $d \mid p-1$, then the congruence $x^{d}-1 \equiv 0(\bmod p)$ has exactly d solutions.

Proof. Since $d \mid p-1$ we have $d k=p-1$ where k is an integer then
$x^{p-1}-1=x^{d k}-1$
$=\left(x^{d}\right)^{k}-1$
$=\left(x^{d}-1\right)\left(\left(x^{d}\right)^{k-1}+\ldots .+1\right)$.
Let $f(x)=\left(x^{d}\right)^{k-1}+\left(x^{d}\right)^{k-2}+\ldots+1$.
Note that, $\operatorname{deg}(f(x))=d(k-1)=p-1-d$ and that $f(x)$ has integral coefficients.
By Lagrange's theorem, $f(x) \equiv 0(\bmod p)$ can have most $\mathrm{p}-1-\mathrm{d}$ solutions incongruent modulo p .

By Fermat's Theorem $x^{p-1} \equiv 1(\bmod p)$ has precisely $\mathrm{p}-1$ solutions incongruent modulo p , namely the integers $1,2, \ldots, p-1$.

Observe that $0 \equiv a^{p-1}-1 \equiv\left(a^{d}-1\right) f(a)(\bmod p)$ with $p \nmid f(a)$ implies that $p \mid a^{d}-1$.
Hence, any solution $x \equiv a(\bmod p)$ of $x^{p-1}-1 \equiv 0(\bmod p)$ other than the solution of $f(x) \equiv 0(\bmod p)$ must satisfy $x^{d}-1 \equiv 0(\bmod p)$. Thus $x^{d}-1 \equiv 0(\bmod p)$ must have at least $p-1-(p-1-d)=d$ solutions. Since $x^{d}-1 \equiv 0(\bmod p)$ can have at most d solutions, it must have exactly d solutions.

Using this corollary we can prove Wilsons theorem
Theorem. (Wilson's theorem)
If p is prime, $(p-1)!\equiv-1(\bmod p)$.
Proof. Consider $f(x)=(x-1)(x-2) \ldots \quad(x-(p-1))-\left(x^{p-1}-1\right)$
$=a_{p-2} x^{p-2}+a_{p-3} x^{p-3}+\ldots \quad+a_{1} x+a_{0}$
where, $a_{0}, a_{1}, \ldots, a_{p-2}$ are integers and that degree of $f(x)$ is $\mathrm{p}-2$.
We know that $x^{p-1}-1 \equiv 0(\bmod p)$ has exactly $(\mathrm{p}-1)$ incongruent solutions modulo p . By construction each of 1 to $\mathrm{p}-1$ is a solution of $f(x) \equiv 0(\bmod p)$ and that $1,2, \ldots,(\mathrm{p}-1)$ are incongruent modulo p .

Since degree of $f(x)$ is $\mathrm{p}-2$ by Lagrange's theorem $f(x) \equiv 0(\bmod p)$ can have at most $\mathrm{p}-2$ incongruent solutions modulo p .

This is possible only if

$$
a_{p-2} \equiv a_{p-3} \equiv \cdots \equiv a_{1} \equiv a_{0} \equiv 0(\bmod p) .
$$

Thus $(x-1)(x-2) \ldots(x-(p-1))-\left(x^{p-1}-1\right) \equiv 0(\bmod p)$ holds for any integer $x$.
Therefore, for $x=0$, we obtain
$(-1)(-2) \cdots(-(p-1)) \equiv-1(\bmod p) \Rightarrow(-1)^{p-1}(p-1)!\equiv-1(\bmod p)$.
If p is odd prime then $\mathrm{p}-1$ is even and for $\mathrm{p}=2$, we have $-1+1 \equiv 0(\bmod p)$. Hence, $(p-1)!\equiv-1(\bmod p)$.

This proves Wilson's theorem .

Theorem. If p is a prime number and $d \mid p-1$, then there are exactly $\phi(d)$ incongruent integers having order d modulo p .

Proof. Suppose $d \mid p-1$. Let $\psi(d)$ denote the number of integers $\mathrm{k}, 1 \leq k \leq p-1$ that have order d modulo p . Since each integer $1,2, \ldots, p-1$ has order d , for some $d \mid(p-1)$.

Thus, $p-1=\sum_{d \mid p-1} \psi(d)$.
By Gauss' theorem
$p-1=\sum_{d \mid p-1} \phi(d)$.
Thus $\sum_{d \mid p-1} \psi(d)=\sum_{d \mid p-1} \phi(d)$
Claim - $\psi(d) \leq \phi(d)$ for each divisor d of $\mathrm{p}-1$.
Let d be an arbitrary divisor of $\mathrm{p}-1$, then either $\psi(d)=0$, or $\psi(d)>0$, If $\psi(d)=0$, then $\psi(d)<\phi(d)$ holds trivially.

Suppose $\psi(d)>0$ then there is an integer $a$ such that order of $a$ modulo p is d with $\operatorname{gcd}(a, p)=1$.

Further, $a, a^{2}, \ldots, a^{d}$ are incongruent modulo p and that each of them satisfies the polynomial congruence

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{d}-1 \equiv 0(\bmod p) \tag{2}
\end{equation*}
$$

for $\left(a^{k}\right)^{d}=\left(a^{d}\right)^{k} \equiv 1^{k} \equiv 1(\bmod p)$ for $k=1,2, \ldots, d$.
Therefore, by corollary to Lagrange's theorem, there can be no other solution of Equation(2).
Thus any integer having order d modulo p must be congruent to one of $a, a^{2}, \ldots \ldots, a^{d}$ modulo p . But only $\phi(d)$ integer amongst $a, a^{2}, \ldots \ldots, a^{d}$ can have order d modulo p . In other words $a^{k}$ has order d modulo p if and only if $\operatorname{gcd}(k, d)=1$. Thus $\psi(d)=\phi(d)$ that is, the number of integers having order d modulo p is equal to $\phi(d)$.Thus $\psi(d) \leq \phi(d)$.

In view of Equation (1) we must have $\phi(d)=\psi(d)$ otherwise L.H.S. of (1) would be less than R.H.S. of (1) which is not possible. Hence, the result.

Corollary. If p is a prime, then there are exactly $\phi(p-1)$ incongruent primitive roots.

Proof. Any primitive root of p has order $\phi(p)=p-1$. Therefore, number of primitive roots of p is exactly $\phi(p-1)$.
e.g. Let $p=13$ then the divisors of $p-1=13-1=12$ are $1,2,3,4,6,12$.

Order of 1 modulo 13 is 1
Order of $2,6,7,11$ is 12
Order of 3,9 is 3
Order of 5, 8 is 4
Order of 4,10 is 6
Order of 12 is 2
It is interesting to note that, the number of incongruent solutions of $x^{6} \equiv 1(\bmod 13)$ is indeed the sum of integers of order $6,3,2$ and 1 . Thus the number of incongruent solutions of $x^{6} \equiv 1(\bmod 13)$ is $2+2+1+1=6$, namely 4,10 of order $6 ; 3,9$ of order $3 ; 12$ of order $2 ; 1$ of order 1 .

Ex.1. If p is a prime of the form $4 \mathrm{k}+1$, then the quadratic congruence $x^{2} \equiv-1(\bmod p)$, admits a solution.

Solution. Since $4 \mid p-1=\phi(p)$ there is an element $a$ of the order 4 , that is $a^{4} \equiv 1(\bmod 4)$.
Thus, $\left(a^{2}+1\right)\left(a^{2}-1\right) \equiv 0(\bmod p) \Rightarrow a^{2} \equiv 1(\bmod p)$ or $a^{2} \equiv-1(\bmod p)$.
Since order of $a$ modulo p is $4, a^{2} \equiv 1(\bmod p)$ is not possible. Hence $a^{2} \equiv-1(\bmod p)$ so that $x^{2} \equiv-1(\bmod p)$ has a solution.

Ex.2. If p is an odd prime, prove that the only incongruent solutions of $x^{2} \equiv 1(\bmod p)$ are 1 and $\mathrm{p}-1$
Solution. We know that $x^{2} \equiv 1(\bmod p)$ has 2 incongruent solutions modulo p .
Since 1 and $1-\mathrm{p}$ are already solutions of $x^{2} \equiv 1(\bmod p)$, they are the only two incongruent solutions of $x^{2} \equiv 1(\bmod p)$.

Ex.3. If p is an odd prime, prove that congruence $x^{p-2}+x^{p-3}+\cdots+x+1 \equiv 0(\bmod p)$
has exactly $\mathrm{p}-2$ incongruent solutions and they are the integers $2,3, \ldots, p-1$.
Solution. We know $x^{p-1}-1 \equiv 0(\bmod p)$ has solution $2,3, \ldots, p-1$.
Since $x^{p-1}-1 \equiv(x-1)\left(x^{p-2}+\ldots . .+x+1\right)$ and $x \equiv 1(\bmod p)$ has solution 1 .
Therefore, $x^{p-2}+x^{p-3}+\cdots+x+1 \equiv 0(\bmod p)$ has solutions $2,3, \ldots, p-1$.

Not let us recall the results :
Let $\operatorname{gcd}(a, n)=1$ and let $a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{\phi(n)}$ be the positive integers less than $n$ and relatively prime to $n$. If $a$ is a primitive root $n$, then $a, a^{2}, \ldots, a^{\phi(n)}$ are congruent modulo $n$ to $a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{\phi(n)}$ in some order.

And
Let $a$ have order $k$ modulo $n$. Then $a^{k}$ also has order $k$ if and only if $\operatorname{gcd}(h, k)=1$.
The later can be rephrased as
Let $a$ be a primitive root then $a$ have order $\phi(n)$ modulo $n$. Then $a^{h}$ also has order $\phi(n)$ if and only if $\operatorname{gcd}(h, \phi(n))=1$. This is equivalent to the statement.

An integer $a^{h}$ is a primitive root of $n$ if and only if $\operatorname{gcd}(h, \phi(n))=1$.
Thus if, we can begin with the smallest primitive root $a$ of an integer $n$ (if exists), then we can use it to find other primitive roots. Interestingly, we need not have to search too far for smallest primitive root as most primes have either 2 or 3 as their primitive root. Let us consider $p=23$, by trial and error we can ensure that 5 is the smallest primitive root. Now we can begin with this primitive root and compute others. In view of above result $5^{h}$ is a primitive root if $\operatorname{gcd}(h, \phi(23))=\operatorname{gcd}(h, 22)=1$ that is, $h=1,3,5,7,9,13,15,17,19,21$ and so $5,5^{3}, 5^{5}, 5^{7}, 5^{9}, 5^{13}, 5^{15}, 5^{17}, 5^{19}, 5^{21}$ are primitive roots. Consider,

$$
5^{3}=5 \times 25 \equiv 5 \times 2 \equiv 10(\bmod 23), 5^{5}=5^{3} \cdot 5^{2} \equiv 10 \times 25 \equiv 10 \times 2 \equiv 20(\bmod 23),
$$

$$
5^{7}=5^{5} \cdot 5^{2} \equiv 20 \times 2 \equiv 17(\bmod 23), 5^{9}=5^{7} \cdot 5^{2} \equiv 17 \times 2 \equiv 11(\bmod 23),
$$

$$
5^{11} \equiv 11 \times 25 \equiv 11 \times 2 \equiv 22(\bmod 23), 5^{13}=22 \times 25 \equiv 22 \times 2 \equiv 21(\bmod 23),
$$

$$
5^{15} \equiv 21 \times 25 \equiv 21 \times 2 \equiv 19(\bmod 23), 5^{17}=19 \times 25 \equiv 19 \times 2 \equiv 15(\bmod 23),
$$

$$
5^{19} \equiv 15 \times 25 \equiv 15 \times 2 \equiv 7(\bmod 23), 5^{21}=7 \times 25 \equiv 7 \times 2 \equiv 14(\bmod 23) .
$$

Thus the primitive roots are $5,7,10,11,14,15,17,19,20,21$. Observe that the number of primitive roots incongruent modulo 23 is $\phi(\phi(23))=\phi(22)=\phi(11)=10$. Here we have also calculated $5^{11}$ for our calculation purpose.

Note that there are 5 pairs $\left\{5,5^{21}\right\},\left\{5^{3}, 5^{19}\right\},\left\{5^{5}, 5^{17}\right\},\left\{5^{7}, 5^{15}\right\},\left\{5^{9}, 5^{13}\right\}$ such that $r r^{\prime} \equiv 1(\bmod 23)$.

This can also be used to find integers of given order from smallest primitive root. Recall the result :

Let $a$ have order $k$ modulo $n$. Then $a^{h}$ also has order $\frac{k}{\operatorname{gcd}(h, k)}$.
Thus, if $a$ is a primitive root, then order of $a$ is $\phi(n)$ so that $a^{h}$ has order $\frac{\phi(n)}{\operatorname{gcd}(h, \phi(n))}$.
We can use this result to find integers of a given order from a primitive root.
Let us consider $p=13$ and it's primitive root 2 . Let us find integers of order 6. Here, $\phi(13)=12$, so the integers of order 6 are those integers $2^{h}$ with
$6=\frac{12}{\operatorname{gcd}(h, 12)} \Rightarrow \operatorname{gcd}(h, 12)=2 \Rightarrow h=2,10$.
Thus $2^{2}, 2^{10}$ are integers of order 6 . Now, $2^{2}=4,2^{10}=1024 \equiv 10(\bmod 13)$. Therefore, 4 and 10 are integers of order 6 .
Let us discuss how to find the number of integers of a given order $k$ modulo $n$.
Let $n$ be an integer having primitive root $a$, then $a, a^{2}, \ldots, a^{\phi(n)}$ are congruent to $a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{\phi(n)}$ in some order. Further, if $a$ have order $k$ modulo $n$. Then $a^{h}$ also has order $\frac{k}{\operatorname{gcd}(h, k)}$.

Thus if, $a$ is a primitive root, then order of $a$ is $\phi(n)$ so that $a^{h}$ has order $\frac{\phi(n)}{\operatorname{gcd}(h, \phi(n))}$. Thus integers of order $k$ are those $a^{h}$ for which $\frac{\phi(n)}{\operatorname{gcd}(h, \phi(n))}=k$ that is, we have to find $h$ such that $\frac{\phi(n)}{k}=\operatorname{gcd}(h, \phi(n))$. Let us consider $p=43$. Here, $\phi(43)=42$, so that there are integers of order $1,2,3,6,7,14,21,42$. First we shall find a primitive root of 43 . Let us start with 2 . We have
$2^{5} \equiv 32 \equiv-11(\bmod 43), 2^{6} \equiv 21(\bmod 43), 2^{7} \equiv-1(\bmod 43)$ and $2^{14}=\left(2^{7}\right)^{2} \equiv(-1)^{2} \equiv 1(\bmod 43)$.
Thus 2 is not a primitive root. Consider

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 3^{4}=81 \equiv-5(\bmod 43), 3^{6}=3^{4} \cdot 3^{2} \equiv(-5)(9) \equiv-2(\bmod 43), 3^{7} \equiv-6(\bmod 43) \\
& 3^{14} \equiv 36 \equiv-7(\bmod 43)
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus $3^{21}=3^{14} \cdot 3^{7} \equiv(-7)(-6) \equiv-1(\bmod 43)$. Hence, 3 is primitive root of 43 .

| Power of 3 | No. cong. <br> mod 43 | Power of 3 | No. cong. <br> mod 43 | Power of 3 | No. cong. <br> mod 43 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 03 | 15 | 22 | 29 | 18 |
| 2 | 09 | 16 | 23 | 30 | 11 |
| 3 | 27 | 17 | 26 | 31 | 33 |
| 4 | 38 | 18 | 35 | 32 | 13 |
| 5 | 28 | 19 | 19 | 33 | 39 |
| 6 | 41 | 20 | 14 | 34 | 31 |
| 7 | 37 | 21 | 42 | 35 | 07 |
| 8 | 25 | 22 | 40 | 36 | 21 |
| 9 | 32 | 23 | 34 | 37 | 20 |
| 10 | 10 | 24 | 16 | 38 | 17 |
| 11 | 30 | 25 | 05 | 39 | 08 |
| 12 | 04 | 26 | 15 | 40 | 24 |
| 13 | 12 | 27 | 02 | 41 | 29 |
| 14 | 36 | 28 | 06 | 42 | 01 |

Table 1
Clearly, only element of order 1 is 1 ,
Now integers of order 2 are those $3^{h}$ for which $\frac{42}{2}=\operatorname{gcd}(h, 42) \Rightarrow \operatorname{gcd}(h, 42)=21 \Rightarrow h=21$.
Thus there is only one integer of order 2 , namely $3^{21} \equiv-1 \equiv 42(\bmod 43)$, that is 42 .
Next integers of order 3 are those $3^{h}$ for which $\frac{42}{3}=\operatorname{gcd}(h, 42) \Rightarrow \operatorname{gcd}(h, 42)=14 \Rightarrow h=14,28$.
Thus there two integer of order 3 , namely 6 and 36 .
Now integers of order 6 are those $3^{h}$ for which $\frac{42}{6}=\operatorname{gcd}(h, 42) \Rightarrow \operatorname{gcd}(h, 42)=7 \Rightarrow h=7,35$.
Thus there are 3 integers of order 6, namely 37, 7 .
Further, integers of order 7 are those $3^{h}$ for which
42
$\frac{42}{7}=\operatorname{gcd}(h, 42) \Rightarrow \operatorname{gcd}(h, 42)=6 \Rightarrow h=6,12,18,24,30,36$. Thus there are 6 integers of order 7 namely $41,4,35,16,11,21$.

Further, integers of order 14 are those $3^{h}$ for which
$\frac{42}{21}=\operatorname{gcd}(h, 42) \Rightarrow \operatorname{gcd}(h, 42)=2 \Rightarrow h=2,4,8,10,16,20,22,26,32,34,38,40$. Thus there are 12 integers of order 21 , namely $9,38,25,10,23,14,40,15,13,31,17,24$.

Finally, integers of order 42 , that is, primitive roots are those $3^{h}$ for which
$\frac{42}{42}=\operatorname{gcd}(h, 42) \Rightarrow \operatorname{gcd}(h, 42)=1 \Rightarrow h=1,5,11,13,17,19,23,25,29,31,37,41$. Thus there are 12 primitive roots for 43 , namely $3,28,30,12,26,19,34,5,18,33,20,29$.

Note that there are 6 pairs $\left\{2,2^{41}\right\},\left\{2^{5}, 2^{37}\right\},\left\{2^{11}, 2^{30}\right\},\left\{2^{13}, 2^{29}\right\},\left\{2^{17}, 2^{28}\right\},\left\{2^{19}, 2^{23}\right\}$ such that $r r^{\prime} \equiv 1(\bmod 43)$.

Let us put it in tabular form.

| Sr. No. | Order | Integers | No. of integers |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 01 |
| 2 | 2 | 42 | 01 |
| 3 | 3 | 6,36 | 02 |
| 4 | 6 | 7,37 | 02 |
| 5 | 7 | $4,11,16,21,35,41$ | 06 |
| 6 | 14 | $2,8,22,27,32,39$ | 06 |
| 7 | 21 | $9,10,13,14,15,17,23,24,25,31,38$ | 12 |
| 8 | 42 | $3,5,12,18,19,20,26,28,29,30,33,34$ | 12 |
|  |  | Total | 42 |

Ex. Find all positive integers less than 61 having order 4 modulo 61.
Solution. Let us find smallest possible positive primitive root modulo 61. Let us begin with
2. Consider the nearest power of 2 to 61 . Note that $\phi(61)=60$ and divisors of 60 are $1,2,3$, $4,5,6,12,15,20,30,60$. We have $2^{8} \equiv 12(\bmod 61), 2^{12}=2^{8} \cdot 2^{4} \equiv 12 \cdot 16 \equiv 9(\bmod 61)$,
$2^{15}=2^{12} \cdot 2^{3} \equiv 9 \cdot 8 \equiv 11(\bmod 61)$ so $2^{20}=2^{12} \cdot 2^{8} \equiv 9 \cdot 3 \equiv 27(\bmod 61)$,
$2^{30}=\left(2^{15}\right)^{2}=(11)^{2}=121 \equiv-1(\bmod 61) \Rightarrow 2^{60} \equiv 1(\bmod 61)$.
Thus 2 is a primitive root. The positive integers less than 61 having order 4 are those $2^{h}$ for which $\frac{60}{4}=\operatorname{gcd}(h, 60) \Rightarrow \operatorname{gcd}(h, 60)=15 \Rightarrow 15,45$. Thus $2^{15} \equiv 11(\bmod 61)$ and
$2^{45}=2^{30} \cdot 2^{15} \equiv(-1)(11) \equiv 50(\bmod 61)$. Hence 11 and 50 are two integers of order 4 modulo 61.

## Exercises :

1. Assuming that $r$ is primitive root of the odd prime $p$, then prove that $r^{(p-1) / 2} \equiv-1(\bmod p)$.
2. Assuming that $r$ is primitive root of the odd prime $p$, and $r^{\prime}$ is another primitive root of $p$, then prove that $r r^{\prime}$ is not a primitive root of $p$.
3. For a prime $p>3$, prove that the primitive roots of $p$ occur in incongruent pairs $r, r^{\prime}$ where $r r^{\prime} \equiv 1(\bmod p)$.
4. Let $r$ be a primitive root of the odd prime $p$. Then prove the following :
(a) If $p \equiv 1(\bmod 4)$, then $-r$ is primitive root of $p$.
(b) If $p \equiv 3(\bmod 4)$, then $-r$ has order $(p-1) / 2$ modulo $p$.

### 7.3 Composite Numbers having primitive root

Theorem. For $k \geq 3$ then integer $2^{k}$ has no primitive roots.
Proof. We shall prove this result by induction on k. However, we begin by showing that if $a$ is an odd integer then, $a^{2^{k-2}} \equiv 1\left(\bmod 2^{k}\right)$.

For $\mathrm{k}=3$ this holds trivially because we know that square of an odd integer is of the form $8 \mathrm{k}+1$, i.e. if $a$ is an odd integer $a^{2} \equiv 1(\bmod 8)$.

Suppose $\mathrm{k}>3$. Let the result (1) holds true for k , that is, our induction hypothesis is
$a^{2^{k-2}} \equiv 1\left(\bmod 2^{k}\right)$.
Therefore, $a^{2^{k-2}}=1+b 2^{k}$, where $b$ is an integer.
Consider
$a^{2^{k-1}}=\left(a^{2^{k-2}}\right)^{2}=\left(1+b 2^{k}\right)^{2}=1+b 2^{k+1}+b^{2} 2^{2 k}=1+2^{k+1}\left(b+b^{2} 2^{k-1}\right) \equiv 1\left(\bmod 2^{k+1}\right)$.
Thus, $a^{2^{k-1}} \equiv 1\left(\bmod 2^{k+1}\right)$.
Therefore, (1) holds for $\mathrm{k}+1$ whenever it holds for k .
Hence, by principle of mathematical induction (1) holds for all $k \geq 3$.
Note that, the integers that are relatively prime to $2^{k}$ are the odd integers. This is to support the choice of $a$ as odd integer in (1) and $\phi\left(2^{k}\right)=2^{k} / 2=2^{k-1}$.

Thus $a^{a^{k-2}}=a^{\phi\left(2^{k}\right) / 2} \equiv 1\left(\bmod 2^{k}\right)$
Thus $2^{k}$ has no primitive root because order of $a$ modulo $2^{k}$ is less than or equal to $\frac{\phi\left(2^{k}\right)}{2}$.
Theorem. If $\operatorname{gcd}(m, n)=1$, where $m>2$ and $n>2$ then the integer $m n$ has no primitive root.
Proof. Let be $a$ an integer such that $\operatorname{gcd}(a, m n)=1$, that is, $\operatorname{gcd}(a, m)=1$ and $\operatorname{gcd}(a, n)=1$.
Let $h=\operatorname{lcm}(\phi(m), \phi(n))$ and $d=\operatorname{gcd}(\phi(m), \phi(n))$.
Since $\phi(m)$ and $\phi(n)$ are even integers, we have $d \geq 2$.
Hence, $h=\frac{\phi(m) \cdot \phi(n)}{d} \leq \frac{\phi(m) \cdot \phi(n)}{2}=\frac{\phi(m n)}{2}$.
By Euler's theorem, $a^{\phi(m)} \equiv 1(\bmod m)$ so that $a^{h}=\left(a^{\phi(m)}\right)^{\phi(n) / d} \equiv 1^{\phi(n) / d} \equiv 1(\bmod m)$.
Similarly, $a^{h} \equiv 1(\bmod n)$. Since $\operatorname{gcd}(m, n)=1 \Rightarrow a^{h} \equiv 1(\bmod m n)$.
Thus, $a^{\phi(m n) / d} \equiv 1(\bmod m n)$. Thus, order of a modulo mn is less than or equal to $\frac{\phi(m) \cdot \phi(n)}{d}=\frac{\phi(m n)}{d} \leq \frac{\phi(m n)}{2}<\phi(m n)$.

Thus mn cannot have primitive roots.
Corollary. The integer n fails to have primitive root if either.
a) $n$ is divisible by two odd primes or
b) n is of the form $n=2^{m} \cdot p^{k}$,
where p is an odd prime and $m \geq 2$.
Proof. a) Let $n=p q$ where p and q are distinct odd primes. Hence $p>2$ and $q>2$ and above theorem applies.
b) Since p is odd prime we have $\operatorname{gcd}\left(2^{m}, p^{k}\right)=1$ and as $m \geq 2,2^{m} \geq 2 \& p^{k}>2$. Therefore, above theorem applies.

Lemma. If p is an odd prime then there exists a primitive root r of p such that $r^{p-1} \neq 1\left(\bmod p^{2}\right)$.

Proof - Since p is an odd prime, it has a primitive root. Let r be one of the primitive roots of p. If $r^{p-1} \neq 1\left(\bmod p^{2}\right)$ we are through.

Suppose $r^{p-1} \equiv 1\left(\bmod p^{2}\right)$ then let $r^{\prime}=r+p$ and
consider, $\left(r^{\prime}\right)^{p-1}=(r+p)^{p-1}=r^{p-1}+(p-1) p r^{p-2}+\frac{(p-1)(p-2)}{2!} p^{2} r^{p-3}+\cdots$ to p terms.
Thus $\left(r^{\prime}\right)^{p-1} \equiv r^{p-1}+(p-1) p r^{p-2}\left(\bmod p^{2}\right)$.
Since, $r^{p-1} \equiv 1\left(\bmod p^{2}\right)$, we have $\left(r^{\prime}\right)^{p-1} \equiv 1-p r^{p-2}\left(\bmod p^{2}\right)$.
Since, r is a primitive root of $p, \operatorname{gcd}(r, p)=1$, we obtain $p \| r^{p-2}$. Note that as r is a primitive root so does $r^{\prime}=r+p$. Hence, $\left(r^{\prime}\right)^{p-1} \nexists 1\left(\bmod p^{2}\right)$ proves the lemma.

Corollary. If $p$ is an odd prime then $p^{2}$ has primitive root. In fact for a primitive root $r$ of $p$ either r or $\mathrm{r}+\mathrm{p}$ (or both) is a primitive root of $p^{2}$.

Proof. Since p is an odd prime, p has a primitive root r . We know that either $r^{p-1} \neq 1\left(\bmod p^{2}\right)$ or $(r+p)^{p-1} \neq 1\left(\bmod p^{2}\right)$. Since, $\phi\left(p^{2}\right)=p(p-1)$ we must have $r^{p-1} \equiv 1\left(\bmod p^{2}\right)$ or $(r+p)^{p-1} \equiv 1\left(\bmod p^{2}\right)$.

So that r or $\mathrm{r}+\mathrm{p}$ is a primitive root of $p^{2}$. Note that if $r^{p-1} \neq 1\left(\bmod p^{2}\right)$, order of $r$ modulo $p^{2}$ must be $\phi\left(p^{2}\right)=p(p-1)$ and similarly if $(r+p)^{p-1} \neq 1\left(\bmod p^{2}\right)$, order of $r$ modulo $p^{2}$ must be $\phi\left(p^{2}\right)=p(p-1)$.

Ex. Find primitive roots of 25 .
Solution. We know that 2,3 are the primitive roots of 5 . Note that there are $\phi(\phi(25))=\phi(20)=8$ primitive roots of 25 . We know that if $r$ is a primitive root of $p$ then $r$ or $r+p$ is a primitive root of $p^{2}$. Therefore, 2 or 7 and 3 or 8 are primitive rots of 25 . Observe that $2^{4} \neq 1(\bmod 25)$ and $3^{4} \neq 1(\bmod 25)$. Therefore, 2 and 3 are primitive roots of 25 . However, there are six more primitive roots of 25 which can be found by brute method or starting with 2 or 3 . Now let us take 2 . The primitive roots of 25 are those powers $h$ or 2 such that $\operatorname{gcd}(h, 20)-1$. Thus $h=1,3,7,9,11,13,17,19$. Thus $2^{3}=8,2^{7}=128 \equiv 3(\bmod 25)$, $2^{9} \equiv 12(\bmod 25), 2^{11} \equiv 23(\bmod 25), 2^{13} \equiv 17(\bmod 25), 2^{17} \equiv 22(\bmod 25), 2^{19} \equiv 13(\bmod 25)$. Thus the primitive roots are $2,3,8,12,13,17,22,23$.

Note. In the above example 2 and 3 are primitive root of 5 as well as 25 . Further, 2 is primitive root but $2+5=7$ is not where as both 3 and $3+5=8$ are primitive roots. Note that $7^{4} \equiv 1(\bmod 25)$. Thus $r^{p-1} \neq 1\left(\bmod p^{2}\right)$ guarantees that $r$ is primitive root of $p^{2}$. Further 3, $8,13,23$ are congruent modulo 5 and $2,12,17,22$ are congruent modulo 5. Also $7 \equiv-18(\bmod 25)$ implies $7^{4} \equiv 18^{4} \equiv 1(\bmod 25)$. The next result assures that if $r$ is a primitive root of $p$ with the property that $r^{p-1} \neq 1\left(\bmod p^{2}\right)$, then $r$ is a primitive root of $p^{k}$ for each positive integer $k \geq 2$.

Lemma. Let p be an odd prime and let r be a primitive root of p with the property that $r^{p-1} \equiv 1\left(\bmod p^{2}\right)$. Then for each positive integer $k \geq 2, r^{p^{k-2}(p-1)} \neq 1\left(\bmod p^{k}\right)$

Proof. We shall prove this result by induction on k . For $\mathrm{k}=2$, the result holds trivially , Suppose that the result holds for $\mathrm{k}=\mathrm{n}$, i. e., $r^{p^{n-2}(p-1)} \neq 1\left(\bmod p^{n}\right)$.

Since $\operatorname{gcd}\left(r, p^{n-1}\right)=\operatorname{gcd}\left(r, p^{n}\right)=1$, by Euler's theorem, we obtain $r^{\phi\left(p^{n-1}\right)} \equiv 1\left(\bmod p^{n-1}\right) \Rightarrow r^{p^{n-2}(p-1)} \equiv 1\left(\bmod p^{n-1}\right) \Rightarrow 1+a p^{n-1}$, for some integer $a$ such that, $p \| a$, otherwise, we would have, $r^{p^{n-2}(p-1)} \equiv 1\left(\bmod p^{n}\right)$ which is absurd.

Now consider

$$
r^{p^{n-1}(p-1)}=\left(r^{p^{n-2}(p-1)}\right)^{p}=\left(1+a p^{k-1}\right)^{p}=1+p \cdot a \cdot p^{k-1}+\cdots .
$$

Thus $r^{p^{n-1}(p-1)} \equiv 1+a p^{n}\left(\bmod p^{n+1}\right)$.
As $p \| a$, we have

$$
r^{p^{n-1}(p-1)} \neq 1\left(\bmod p^{n+1}\right) .
$$

Therefore the result holds true for any k by induction.

Theorem. If $p$ is an odd prime and $k \geq 1$, then there exists a primitive root for $p^{k}$.
Proof. We know that, if $p$ is an odd prime then there is a primitive root $r$ modulo $p$ such that $r^{p-1} \not \equiv 1\left(\bmod p^{2}\right)$ and that for such an $r$, for each positive integer $k \geq 2$, $r^{p^{k-2}(p-1)} \neq 1\left(\bmod p^{k}\right)$. Thus it is enough to find an $r$ such that $r^{p-1} \nexists 1\left(\bmod p^{2}\right)$ which serves as a primitive root for all powers of $p$.

Let $n$ be the order of $r$ modulo $p^{k}$, then $n$ must divide $\phi\left(p^{k}\right) \mid p^{k-1}(p-1)$. Since $n$ is the order of $r$ modulo $p^{k}$, we have $r^{n} \equiv 1\left(\bmod p^{k}\right)$ which implies that $r^{n} \equiv 1(\bmod p)$. Therefore, $\phi(p)=p-1 \mid n$. Thus $n$ has the form $n=p^{m}(p-1)$, where $0 \leq m \leq k-1$. In case $m<k-1$, then we would have $n \mid p^{k-2}(p-1)$ and we get $r^{p^{k-2}(p-1)} \equiv 1\left(\bmod p^{k}\right)$ which contradicts our assumption that $r^{p^{k-2}(p-1)} \not \neq 1\left(\bmod p^{k}\right)$. Therefore, $n=p^{k-1}(p-1)$, that is, $r$ is primitive root modulo $p^{k}$ for any integer $k \geq 1$.

Finally we consider the case $2 p^{k}$, where $k \geq 1$.
Corollary. There are primitive roots for $2 p^{k}$ where $p$ is an odd prime and $k \geq 1$.
Proof. We know that $p^{k}$ with $k \geq 1$ has primitive root and let $r$ be a primitive root for $p^{k}$. With no loss of generality, we may take $r$ to be an odd integer, for if it were even then $r+p^{k}$ would be an odd primitive root for $p k$. Since $r$ is odd, we have $\operatorname{gcd}\left(r, 2 p^{k}\right)=1$. Let $n$ be the order of $r$ modulo $2 p^{k}$. Then $r$ must divide $\phi\left(2 p^{k}\right)=\phi(2) \phi\left(p^{k}\right)=\phi\left(p^{k}\right)$. Now $r^{n} \equiv 1\left(\bmod 2 p^{k}\right) \Rightarrow r^{n} \equiv 1\left(\bmod p^{k}\right)$. Therefore, $\quad\left(2 p^{k}\right) \mid n . \quad$ On the other hand $n \mid\left(2 p^{k}\right)=\phi\left(p^{k}\right)$. Thus $n=\phi\left(p^{k}\right)$ and consequently, $r$ is primitive roots for $2 p^{k}$.

Note that 1 primitive roots for 2,3 is primitive root for 4 and thus we summarize.
Theorem. An integer $n>1$ has a primitive root if and only if $n=2,4, p^{k}$ or $2 p^{k}$.
Ex. Find four primitive roots of 26 .
Solution. The integer 26 is of the form $26=2 \times 13$, that is of the form $2 p$ and therefore, it has primitive roots. We begin by evaluating $\phi(26)=\phi(2 \cdot 13)=\phi(13)=12$. Therefore, order of any integer relatively prime to 26 is divisor of 12 . Note that the divisors of 12 are $1,2,3,4,6$, 12. Further, there are exactly $\phi(\phi(13))=\phi(12)=\phi(3) \phi(4)=2 \cdot 2=4$ primitive roots. We can directly find the primitive roots or use the method of obtaining the primitive roots starting from the smallest primitive root. Let us do it directly. The integers relatively prime to 26 are $1,3,5,7,9,11,15,17,19,21,23,25$. Clearly, $3^{3}=27 \equiv 1(\bmod 26)$ so order of 3 is 3 . Next, $\quad 5^{2} \equiv 25 \equiv-1(\bmod 26) \Rightarrow 5^{4} \equiv 1(\bmod 26) \quad$ so that order of 5 is 4 . Now $7^{2}=49 \equiv-3(\bmod 26), 7^{3}=7^{2} \cdot 7 \equiv-3 \cdot 7 \equiv 5(\bmod 26)$ and
$7^{6} \equiv 5^{2} \equiv-1(\bmod 26) \Rightarrow 7^{12} \equiv 1(\bmod 26)$, that is, order of 7 is 12 , hence 7 is primitive root. Clearly, $9^{3}=\left(3^{2}\right)^{3}=\left(3^{3}\right)^{2} \equiv 1$, therefore, 9 is not a primitive root. Now, $11^{2}=121 \equiv 17(\bmod 26)$ and, $11^{3}=11^{2} \cdot 11 \equiv 17 \cdot 11 \equiv(-9) 11 \equiv 5(\bmod 6)$ thus $11^{4}=\left(11^{2}\right)^{2} \equiv(-9)(-9) \equiv 81 \equiv 3(\bmod 26)$. Next $11^{6}=\left(11^{3}\right)^{2} \equiv 5^{2} \equiv-1(\bmod 26)$ therefore, order of 11 is 12 , that is 11 is also a primitive root modulo 26. Consider, $15 \equiv-11(\bmod 26),(15)^{2} \equiv(-11)^{2} \equiv(11)^{2} \equiv(-9)(\bmod 26)$, further, $(15)^{3}=(15)^{2}(15) \equiv(-9)(-11) \equiv-5(\bmod 26),(15)^{4} \equiv(15)^{2} \equiv(-9)^{2} \equiv 3(\bmod 26)$ and $(15)^{6} \equiv\left(15^{3}\right)^{2} \equiv(-5)^{2} \equiv-1(\bmod 26)$, therefore, 15 is a primitive root for 26 . Thus we have found 3 primitive roots and obvious guess for the fourth one is 19 as $19 \equiv-7(\bmod 26)$ and we are just required to verify that $(19)^{3} \neq 1(\bmod 26)$ and $(19)^{3} \neq-1(\bmod 26)$. For that it is enough to see that $(-7)^{3}=(-7)^{2}(-7)=(7)^{2}(-7) \equiv(-3)(-7) \equiv-5(\bmod 26) \quad$ so
$(-7)^{3} \equiv(19)^{3} \equiv-5(\bmod 26)$ Thus the fourth primitive root is 19 . Thus once we verify that 7 and 11 are primitive roots obvious guess are 19 and 15.

Alternatively, once we obtain 7 as the smallest primitive root, the other three are $7^{5}, 7^{7}, 7^{11}$. Consider $7^{2}=49 \equiv-3(\bmod 26), 7^{3}=7^{2} \cdot 7 \equiv(-3) \cdot 7 \equiv 5(\bmod 26), 7^{4}=\left(7^{2}\right)^{2} \equiv(-3)^{2} \equiv 9(\bmod 26)$ therefore, $7^{5}=7^{2} \cdot 7^{3} \equiv(-3) \cdot 5 \equiv 11(\bmod 26), 7^{7}=7^{4} \cdot 7^{3} \equiv 9 \cdot 5 \equiv 19(\bmod 26)$, and $7^{11}=\left(7^{7}\right)\left(7^{4}\right) \equiv 19 \cdot 9 \equiv(-7) 9 \equiv 15(\bmod 26)$. Thus the four primitive roots are $7,11,15,19$. Let us find integers of order 6 modulo 26. Here, $\phi(26)=\phi(13)=12$, so the integers of order 6 are those integers $7^{h}$ with $h=\frac{\phi(26)}{\operatorname{gcd}(h, \phi(26))} \Rightarrow 6=\frac{12}{\operatorname{gcd}(h, 12)} \Rightarrow \operatorname{gcd}(h, 12)=2 \Rightarrow h=2,10$ . Thus integers of order 6 modulo 26 are $7^{2}, 7^{10}$. Thus smallest positive integers of order 6 modulo 26 are, $7^{2}=49 \equiv 23(\bmod 26), 7^{3} \equiv 5(\bmod 26) \Rightarrow 7^{6}=\left(7^{3}\right)^{2} \equiv(5)^{2} \equiv 25(\bmod 26)$ and $7^{10}=7^{6} \cdot 7^{2} \cdot 7^{2} \equiv(-1) \cdot(-3)(-3) \equiv-9 \equiv 17(\bmod 26)$. Thus integers of order 6 modulo 26 are 17,23 . However, one is tempted to wonder if 3,9 are also integers of order 6 , but both are clearly ruled out, for $3^{3} \equiv 1$ and $9^{3} \equiv\left(3^{3}\right)^{2} \equiv 1^{2} \equiv 1$.

Now let us find integers of order 3 modulo 26. Here, $\phi(26)=\phi(13)=12$, so the integers of order 3 are those integers $7^{h}$ with

$$
h=\frac{\phi(26)}{\operatorname{gcd}(h, \phi(26))} \Rightarrow 3=\frac{12}{\operatorname{gcd}(h, 12)} \Rightarrow \operatorname{gcd}(h, 12)=4 \Rightarrow h=4,8 .
$$

Thus the integers of order 3 are, $7^{4}=\left(7^{2}\right)^{2} \equiv(-3)^{2} \equiv 9(\bmod 26)$ and $7^{8}=\left(7^{4}\right)^{2} \equiv(9)^{2} \equiv 3(\bmod 26)$, that is 3 and 9 are integers of order 3 modulo 26.

Now let us find integers of order 2 modulo 26. Here, $\phi(26)=\phi(13)=12$, so the integers of order 2 are those integers $7^{h}$ with
$h=\frac{\phi(26)}{\operatorname{gcd}(h, \phi(26))} \Rightarrow 2=\frac{12}{\operatorname{gcd}(h, 12)} \Rightarrow \operatorname{gcd}(h, 12)=6 \Rightarrow h=6$.
Thus the integer of order 2 is, $7^{6} \equiv 25(\bmod 26)$. Thus 25 is integers of order 2 modulo 26 .
Similarly, the integers of order 4 are those integers $7^{h}$ with
$h=\frac{\phi(26)}{\operatorname{gcd}(h, \phi(26))} \Rightarrow 4=\frac{12}{\operatorname{gcd}(h, 12)} \Rightarrow \operatorname{gcd}(h, 12)=3 \Rightarrow h=3,9$ and hence, the integers of
order 3 are, $7^{3} \equiv 5(\bmod 26)$ and $7^{9}=\left(7^{8}\right) \cdot 7 \equiv 3 \cdot 7 \equiv 21(\bmod 26)$. Thus 5 and 21 are integers of order 4 modulo 26 .

In general we can list the integers as follows :
Primitive roots are $7,7^{5}, 7^{7}, 7^{11}$; that is $7,11,15,19$.
Integers of order 6 modulo 256 are, $7^{2}, 7^{6}, 7^{10}$; that is 17,23 ,
integers of order 4 modulo 26 are, $7^{3}, 7^{9}$; that is 5,21 ,
integers of order 3 modulo 26 are, $7^{4}, 7^{8}$; that is, 3,9 ,
integers of order 2 modulo 26 is, $7^{6}$; that is, 25 ,
Integers of order 1 modulo 26 is, 1 .
Ex. Find all primitive roots of 41 and 82 .
Solution. Consider $2^{5} \equiv-9(\bmod 41), 2^{10} \equiv-1(\bmod 41)$, so 2 is not a primitive root of 41 .
Next $3^{4} \equiv-1(\bmod 41)$ implies that 3 is also not a primitive root of 41 . Further, $4^{5}=2^{10} \equiv-1(\bmod 41)$ and hence 4 is also not a primitive root. Now $5^{3} \equiv-2(\bmod 41)$, $5^{6} \equiv 4(\bmod 41), 5^{4} \equiv-10(\bmod 41), 5^{10}=5^{6} \cdot 5^{4} \equiv(4)(-10) \equiv-1(\bmod 41) \quad$ therefore, 5 is also not a primitive root. Consider, $6^{2} \equiv-5(\bmod 41), \quad 6^{4} \equiv 25(\bmod 41)$, $6^{6}=6^{4} \cdot 6^{2} \equiv-2(\bmod 41), 6^{10}=6^{6} \cdot 6^{4} \equiv-9(\bmod 41)$. Thus $6^{20} \equiv-1(\bmod 41)$ and hence 6 is primitive root of 41 .

Now 6 being an even integer it cannot be a primitive root of 82 and hence, $6+41=47$ is primitive root of 82 .

## Notes :

1. Clearly, 2 is primitive root of 3 and $2^{2}=4 \nexists 1(\bmod 9)$, so 2 is primitive root of all powers of 3 .
2. Since $\phi\left(2 p^{n}\right)=\phi\left(p^{n}\right)$, they have same number of primitive roots.
3. Any primitive root of $p^{2}$ is also a primitive root of $p^{n}$ for $n \geq 2$.

## Exercise :

1. Prove that 3 is a primitive root of all integers of the form $7^{k}$ and $2 \cdot 7^{k}$.
2. Prove that any primitive root $r$ of $p^{n}$ is also a primitive root of $p$.

### 7.4 THE THEORY OF INDICES

Consider the Table 1. In this table we have we out powers of primitive root 3 and the positive integers less than 43 congruent to it modulo 43 . However, if we take any other primitive root and the table would be different. Thus for a given primitive root we can always work out such a table. For example, we have $3^{35} \equiv 7(\bmod 43)$ and in this case we say that index of 7 relative to (primitive root) 3 is 35 . Similarly, $3^{29} \equiv 18(\bmod 43)$ and in this case we say that index of 18 relative to (primitive root) 3 is 29 .

The concept of indices was introduced by Gauss. Let $n$ be any integer that admits a primitive $r$. We know that, $\phi(n)$ the integers $r, r^{2}, \ldots, r^{\phi(n)}$ are congrnent modulo $n$ to $a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots ., a_{\phi(n)}$, the $\phi(n)$ integers less than $n$ and relatively prime to $n$. In other words each integer $a$ such that $\operatorname{gcd}(a, n)=1$ can be expressed as $a \equiv r^{k}(\bmod n)$ for a suitable choice of $k$, where $1 \leq k \leq \phi(n)$. This idea prompts the following definition.

Definition : Let $r$ be a primitive root of $n$ and $\operatorname{gcd}(a, n)=1$. Then the smallest integer $k$ such that $a \equiv r^{k}(\bmod n)$ is called index of $a$ relative to $r$ and is denoted by $\operatorname{ind}_{r} a$.

## Notes :

1. Clearly, $1 \leq \operatorname{ind}_{r} a \leq \phi(n)$.
2. Whenever we talk about index it is assumed that $\operatorname{gcd}(a, n)=1$.
3. If $a \equiv b(\bmod n)$ then $\operatorname{ind}_{r} a=\operatorname{ind}_{r} b$ that is $r^{\text {ind }, a} \equiv r^{\text {ind }, b}(\bmod n)$.

Clearly, $1 \leq \operatorname{ind}_{r} a \leq \phi(n)$ and that $r^{\operatorname{ind}_{r} a} \equiv a(\bmod n)$.
e.g. Let us consider $n=5$ and primitive root $r=2$ of 5 . Then
$2^{1} \equiv 2(\bmod 5), 2^{2} \equiv 4(\bmod 5), 2^{3} \equiv 3(\bmod 5)$ and $2^{4} \equiv 1(\bmod 5)$.
Thus $\operatorname{ind}_{2} 1=4, \operatorname{ind}_{2} 2=1, \operatorname{ind}_{2} 3=3$ and $\operatorname{ind}_{2} 4=2$.
Note that $a \equiv b(\bmod n) \Rightarrow$ ind $a=\operatorname{ind} b$.
Let $a \equiv b(\bmod n)$ and $r$ be a primitive root of $n$.
Then $r^{\text {ind } a} \equiv a(\bmod n)$ and $r^{\text {ind } b} \equiv b(\bmod n)$.

[^2]Thus $r^{\text {ind } a} \equiv r^{\text {ind } b}(\bmod n)$.
Therefore, ind $a \equiv \operatorname{ind} b(\bmod \phi(n))$ which is possible only if ind $a=\operatorname{ind} b$. Thus, when setting up tables of values of ind $a$, it is enough to take integers less than $a$ and relatively prime to $n$.

Theorem : If $n$ has a primitive root $r$ and ind $a$ denotes index of $a$ relative to $r$, then the following properties hold.
(a) $\quad$ ind $a b \equiv \operatorname{ind} a+\operatorname{ind} b(\bmod \phi(n))$
(b) $\quad$ ind $a^{k} \equiv k$ ind $a(\bmod \phi(n))$ for $k>0$
(c) $\quad$ ind $1 \equiv 0(\bmod \phi(n))$, ind $r \equiv 1(\bmod \phi(n))$

Proof: By definition of index
(a) $r^{\text {ind } a} \equiv a(\bmod n)$ and $r^{\text {ind } b} \equiv b(\bmod n)$

Therefore $r^{\text {ind } a+\text { ind } b} \equiv a b(\bmod n)$.
Since $r^{\text {ind } a b} \equiv a b(\bmod n)$ we have $r^{\text {ind } a+\text { ind } b} \equiv r^{\text {ind } a b}(\bmod n)$.
Hence, ind $a+$ ind $b \equiv \operatorname{ind} a b(\bmod \phi(n))$.
(b) Note that $r^{\text {ind } a^{k}} \equiv a^{k}(\bmod n)$.

And $r^{k \text { ind } a}=\left(r^{\text {ind } a}\right)^{k} \equiv a^{k}(\bmod n)$.
Hence, $r^{\operatorname{ind} a^{k}} \equiv r^{k \text { ind } a}(\bmod n)$.
Therefore, ind $a^{k} \equiv k$ ind $a(\bmod \phi(n))$.
(c) Finally, $r^{\phi(n)} \equiv 1(\bmod n) \Rightarrow$ ind $1 \equiv 0(\bmod \phi(n))$ and ind $r \equiv 1(\bmod \phi(n))$.

The theory of indices can be used to solve certain types of congruences. Consider the binomial congruence.

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{k} \equiv a(\bmod n) \quad(k \geq 2) \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $n$ is a positive integer having primitive root and $\operatorname{gcd}(a, n)=1$. In view of above theorem (1) is equivalent to the linear congruence.

$$
\begin{equation*}
k \operatorname{ind} x \equiv \operatorname{ind} a(\bmod \phi(n)) \tag{2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let $d=\operatorname{gcd}(k, \phi(n))$. If $d /$ ind $a$ then (2) is not solvable. However, if $d \mid \operatorname{ind} a$, then (2) has exactly $d$ values of index modulo $\phi(n)$. Consequently, there are $d$ solutions of (1).

Consider the case $k=1, n=p$ where $p$ is odd prime. In this case (1) becomes,

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{2} \equiv a(\bmod p) \tag{3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since $\operatorname{gcd}(2, p-1)=2$, (3) has two solutions provided $2 \mid$ ind $a$.
Let $r$ be a primitive root of $p$. Then $r, r^{2}, \ldots ., r^{p-1}$ are congruent modulo $p$ to $1,2, \ldots$, $p-1$ in some order. The even powers of $r$ produce the values of $a$ for which the congruence $x^{2} \equiv a(\bmod p)$ is solvable. Note that there are precisely $(p-1) / 2$ such choices for $a$.

Example: Solve $4 x^{9} \equiv 7(\bmod 13)$
Solution : The above equation can be solved using theory of indices. Let us fix 2 as primitive root of 13 . Note that,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 2^{1} \equiv 2(\bmod 13), 2^{2} \equiv 4(\bmod 13), 2^{3} \equiv 8(\bmod 13) \\
& 2^{4} \equiv 3(\bmod 13), 2^{5} \equiv 6(\bmod 13), 2^{6} \equiv 12(\bmod 13) \\
& 2^{7} \equiv 11(\bmod 13), 2^{8} \equiv 9(\bmod 13), 2^{9} \equiv 5(\bmod 13) \\
& 2^{10} \equiv 10(\bmod 13), 2^{11} \equiv 7(\bmod 13), 2^{12} \equiv 1(\bmod 13)
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus index table can be written as,

| $a$ | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ind $a$ | 12 | 1 | 4 | 2 | 9 | 5 | 11 | 3 | 8 | 10 | 7 | 6 |

Now (1) has a solution iff

$$
\operatorname{ind}_{2} 4+9 \operatorname{ind}_{2} x \equiv \operatorname{ind}_{2} 7(\bmod 12)
$$

$$
\begin{array}{lc}
\Rightarrow & 2+9 \operatorname{ind}_{2} x \equiv 11(\bmod 12) \\
\Rightarrow & 9 \operatorname{ind}_{2} x \equiv 9(\bmod 12) \\
\Rightarrow & \operatorname{ind}_{2} x \equiv 1(\bmod 4) \\
\Rightarrow & \operatorname{ind}_{2} x \equiv 1,5,9
\end{array}
$$

Looking at the index table, we obtain

$$
x \equiv 2,5 \text { or } 6(\bmod 13)
$$

Note : Let us consider $p=13$. We can obtain $\phi(\phi(13))=4$ primitive roots of 13 . If we know one of them. Let us start with 2 . Infact remaining 3 can be obtained from the powers $2^{k}(1 \leq k \leq \phi(n))$ where $\operatorname{gcd}(k, \phi(13))=\operatorname{gcd}(k, 12)=1$. They are

$$
2^{1} \equiv 2,2^{5} \equiv 6,2^{7} \equiv 11,2^{11} \equiv 7(\bmod 13)
$$

Theorem : Let $n$ be an integer possessing primitive root and let $\operatorname{gcd}(a, n)=1$. Then the congruence $x^{k} \equiv a(\bmod n)$ has a solutions if and only if

$$
a^{\phi(n) / d} \equiv 1(\bmod n)
$$

where $d=\operatorname{gcd}(k, \phi(n))$, if it has a solution, there are exactly $d$ solutions modulo $n$.
Proof : Taking indices, the congruence $a^{\phi(n) / d} \equiv 1(\bmod n)$ is equivalent to $\frac{\phi(n)}{d}$ ind $a \equiv \operatorname{ind} 1(\bmod \phi(n))$.

Since ind $1 \equiv 0(\bmod \phi(n))$, we obtain.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{\phi(n)}{d} \text { ind } a \equiv 0(\bmod \phi(n)) \\
& \Rightarrow \operatorname{ind} a \equiv 0(\bmod d) \\
& \Rightarrow d \mid \operatorname{ind} a
\end{aligned}
$$

But this is necessary and sufficient condition for congruence $x^{k} \equiv a(\bmod n)$ to be solvable. However, if the congruence has solution, then there are exactly $d$ solutions modulo $n$.

Corollary : Let $p$ be a prime and $\operatorname{gcd}(a, p)=1$. Then the congruence $x^{k} \equiv a(\bmod p)$ has a solution if and only if $a^{(p-1) / d} \equiv 1(\bmod p)$, where $d=\operatorname{gcd}(k, p-1)$.

Example : Consider $x^{3} \equiv 4(\bmod 13)$.
Here $d=\operatorname{gcd}(3, \phi(13))=\operatorname{gcd}(3,12)=3$ and so $\phi(13) / d=4$. Observe that $4^{4} \neq 1(\bmod 13)$. Hence, this congruence has no solution.

Example: Solve $x^{3} \equiv 5(\bmod 13)$.
Solution : Here $d=\operatorname{gcd}(3, \phi(13))=4$ and $5^{4} \equiv 1(\bmod 13)$.
Hence, $x^{3} \equiv 5(\bmod 13)$ has a solution. Now the given congruence is equivalent to

$$
\begin{aligned}
3 \text { ind } x & \equiv \operatorname{ind} 5(\bmod 12) \\
3 \text { ind } x & \equiv 9(\bmod 12) \\
\text { ind } x & \equiv 3(\bmod 4) \\
\text { ind } x & \equiv 3,7 \text { or } 11
\end{aligned}
$$

And hence, $x \equiv 7,8$ or $11(\bmod 13)$.
Example: Solve $x^{12} \equiv 13(\bmod 17)$.
Solution. We have $x^{12} \equiv 13(\bmod 17)$
We know that 3 is a primitive root of 17 and therefore, this is equivalent to

$$
12 \text { ind }_{3} x \equiv \operatorname{ind}_{3} 13(\bmod \phi(17)) \text { or } 12 \text { ind }_{3} x \equiv 4(\bmod 16)
$$

Clearly $\operatorname{gcd}(12,16)=4 \mid 4$ and hence 12 ind $_{3} x \equiv 4(\bmod 16)$ or $3 \cdot \operatorname{ind}_{3} x \equiv 1(\bmod 4)$ has a solution ind $_{3} x=3$. Thus $x=10$. Thus solutions modulo 17 are $2,6,10,14$.

If we take primitive root 5 instead of 3 , we have ind $_{3} x=3$ implies $x=6$ and in this case also solutions modulo 17 are $2,6,10,14$.

Note that $\operatorname{gcd}(12,16)=4$ and hence there are 4 incongruent solutions modulo 17 .
Ex. Solve $8 x^{5} \equiv 10(\bmod 17)$.
Solution. We have $8 x^{5} \equiv 10(\bmod 17)$
We know that 3 is a primitive toot of 17 and therefore, this is equivalent to

$$
\operatorname{ind}_{3} 8+5 \cdot \operatorname{ind}_{3} 10(\bmod \phi(17)) \text { or } 10+5 \cdot \text { ind }_{3} x \equiv 4(\bmod 16)
$$

Thus

$$
5 \cdot \operatorname{ind}_{3} x \equiv 10(\bmod 16) \Rightarrow \operatorname{ind}_{3} x \equiv 2(\bmod 16) \Rightarrow \operatorname{ind}_{3} x=2 \Rightarrow x=9
$$

Therefore, the solution is 9 modulo 17.
Ex. Solve $7^{x} \equiv 7(\bmod 17)$.
Solution. We have $7^{x} \equiv 7(\bmod 17)$
We know that 3 is a primitive root of 17 and therefore, this is equivalent to

$$
x \cdot \operatorname{ind}_{3} 7 \equiv \operatorname{ind}_{3} 7(\bmod \phi(17)) \text { or } x \equiv 1(\bmod 16) .
$$

Thus, the solution is 1 modulo 16 .
Note that in above example solution is congruent to $\phi(17)=16$ but not 17 which is the case in earlier examples.

Ex. Find the remainder when $3^{24} \cdot 5^{13}$ is dividisble by 17 .
Solution. We have to solve

$$
3^{24} \cdot 5^{13} \equiv x(\bmod 17)
$$

Using theory of indices we can write

$$
24 \cdot \operatorname{ind}_{3} 3+13 \cdot \operatorname{ind}_{3} 5 \equiv \operatorname{ind}_{3} x(\bmod \phi(17)) .
$$

Thus we have

$$
24 \cdot 1+13 \cdot 5 \equiv \operatorname{ind}_{3} x(\bmod 16) \Rightarrow \operatorname{ind}_{3} x \equiv 9(\bmod 16) \Rightarrow \text { ind }_{3} x=9 \Rightarrow x=12 .
$$

Therefore, only solution is 12 modulo 17 . Thus 12 is the remainder.

## Exercise :

1. Determine whether the two congruences $x^{5} \equiv 13(\bmod 23)$ and $x^{17} \equiv 15(\bmod 29)$ are solvable.
2. For which values of $b$ is the exponential congruence $9^{x} \equiv b(\bmod 13)$ solvable ?
3. Solve the congruence $7 x^{3} \equiv 3(\bmod 11)$.
4. Solve the congruence $3 x^{4} \equiv 5(\bmod 11)$.
5. Determine the integers $a(1 \leq a \leq 12)$ such that the congruence $a x^{4} \equiv b(\bmod 13)$ has solution for $b=2,5$ and 6 .

## Unit - 8

## THE QUADRATIC RECIPROCITY LAW

### 8.1 QUADRATIC RESIDUE

The qudratic reciprocity law deals with solvability of quadratic congruences. Consider the congruence.

$$
\begin{equation*}
a x^{2}+b x+c \equiv 0(\bmod p) \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $p$ is prime and $a \equiv 0(\bmod p)$.
Since $p$ is odd prime and $p \nmid a$, we have $\operatorname{gcd}(4 a, p)=1$. Therefore, the quadratic congruence in $\mathrm{Eq}^{\mathrm{n}}$. (1) is equivalent to,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 4 a\left(a x^{2}+b x+c\right) \equiv 0(\bmod p) \\
& \Rightarrow 4 a^{2} x^{2}+4 a b x+4 a c \equiv 0(\bmod p) \\
& \Rightarrow(2 a x+b)^{2} \equiv b^{2}-4 a c(\bmod p)
\end{aligned}
$$

Now put $2 a x+b=y$ and $d=b^{2}-4 a c$, then we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
y^{2} \equiv d(\bmod p) \tag{2}
\end{equation*}
$$

If $x \equiv x_{0}(\bmod p)$ is a solution of the quadratic congruence in $\mathrm{Eq}^{\mathrm{n}}$. (1), then the integer $y \equiv 2 a x_{0}+b(\bmod p)$ is a solution of Eqn. (2). Conversely, if $y \equiv y_{0}(\bmod p)$ is a solution of quadratic congruence in Eqn. (2), then $2 a x \equiv y_{0}-b(\bmod p)$ can be solved to obtain solution to $\mathrm{Eq}^{\mathrm{n}}$. (1).

Thus, the problem of finding a solution to the quadratic congruence in $\mathrm{Eq}^{\mathrm{n}}$. (1) is equivalent to that of finding a solution to linear congruence and a quadratic congruence of the form.

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{2} \equiv a(\bmod p) \tag{3}
\end{equation*}
$$

If $p \mid a$, then the quadratic congruence in Eqn. (3) has $x \equiv 0(\bmod p)$ as its only solution. To avoid trivialities, let us agree to assume hereafter that $p \nmid a$. Thus whenever $x=x_{0}$ is a solution of $x^{2} \equiv a(\bmod p)$, there is also a second solution $x=p-x_{0}$. Since $x_{0} \equiv p-x_{0}(\bmod p)$ implies $2 x_{0} \equiv 0(\bmod p)$ or equivalently $x_{0} \equiv 0(\bmod p)$ which is impossible as $p \nmid a . x_{0}$ and $p-x_{0}$ are incongruent modulo $p$. By Lagranges theorem $x^{2} \equiv a(\bmod p)$ admits two solutions $x_{0}$ and $p-x_{0}$ exhaust the incongruent solutions of $x^{2} \equiv a(\bmod p)$. Thus $x^{2} \equiv a(\bmod p)$ has exactly two solutions or no solutions.
e.g. consider the quadratic congruence

$$
5 x^{2}-6 x+2 \equiv 0(\bmod 13)
$$

This is equivalent to,

$$
\begin{align*}
& 4 \times 5\left(5 x^{2}-6 x+2\right) \equiv 0(\bmod 13) \\
& \Rightarrow\left(100 x^{2}-120 x+36\right)+4 \equiv 0(\bmod 13) \\
& \Rightarrow(100 x-6) \equiv 9(\bmod 13) \\
& \Rightarrow y^{2} \equiv 9(\bmod 13) \tag{4}
\end{align*}
$$

where $y=10 x-6$.
Clearly, (4) has solutions $y \equiv 3,10(\bmod 13)$.
Next consider the linear equations

$$
10 x-6 \equiv 3(\bmod 13) \text { and } 10 x-6 \equiv 10(\bmod 13)
$$

or equivalently

$$
10 x \equiv 9(\bmod 13) \text { and } 10 x \equiv 3(\bmod 13)
$$

It can be seen that $x \equiv 10(\bmod 13)$ and $x \equiv 12(\bmod 13)$ are solutions of the above linear congruences. Hence, $x=10,12$ are solutions of quadratic congruence modulo 13.

Definition : Let $p$ be an odd prime and $\operatorname{gcd}(a, p)=1$. If the quadratic congruence $x^{2} \equiv a(\bmod p)$ has a solution then $a$ is said to be quadratic residue of $\boldsymbol{p}$ otherwise $a$ is called quadratic non-residue of $\boldsymbol{p}$.

Note: If $a \equiv b(\bmod p)$, then $a$ is quadratic residue. If and only if $b$ is a quadratic residue of $p$.

Example : Consider the example with $p=13$. We shall find out how many of the integers 1, $2, \ldots, 12$ are quadiatic residues of 13 . That is to find which of the congruences $x^{2} \equiv a(\bmod 13)$ are solvable when $a$ runs through $\{1,2, \ldots, 12\}$.

Consider,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 1^{2} \equiv 12^{2} \equiv 1 \\
& 2^{2} \equiv 11^{2} \equiv 4 \\
& 3^{2} \equiv 10^{2} \equiv 9 \\
& 4^{2} \equiv 9^{2} \equiv 3 \\
& 5^{2} \equiv 8^{2} \equiv 12 \\
& 6^{2} \equiv 7^{2} \equiv 10
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus $1,3,4,9,10,12$ are quadratic residues of 13 and $2,5,6,7,8,11$ are quadratic non-residues.

Further, there are two pairs of consecutive quadratic residues namely 3,4 and 9,10 . In general for any odd prime $p$ there are $\frac{1}{4}\left(p-4-(-1)^{(p-1) / 2}\right)$ consecutive pairs.

For $p=3$, there are $\frac{1}{4}\left(13-4-(-1)^{(13-1) / 2}\right)=2$ pairs.

## Theorem : (Euler's Criterion)

Let $p$ be an odd prime and $\operatorname{gcd}(a, p)=1$. Then $a$ is a quadratic residue of $p$ if and only if $a^{(p-1) / 2}=1(\bmod p)$.

Proof: Suppose that $a$ is a quadratic residue of $p$, so that $x^{2} \equiv a(\bmod p)$ admits a solution, call it $x_{1}$. Since $\operatorname{gcd}(a, p)=1, \operatorname{gcd}\left(x_{1}, p\right)=1$. Then $x_{1}^{2} \equiv a(\bmod p)$, i.e. $a \equiv x_{1}^{2}(\bmod p)$.Therefore, by Fermat's theorem.

$$
a^{(p-1) / 2}=\left(x_{1}^{2}\right)^{\frac{(p-1)}{2}} \equiv x_{1}^{p-1} \equiv 1(\bmod p)
$$

Conversely, suppose that $a^{(p-1) / 2}=1(\bmod p)$ holds. Let $r$ be a primitive root of $p$. Then we know that $r, r^{2}, \ldots ., r^{k}$ are congruent modulo $n$ to $a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots ., a_{\phi(n)}$ a integer less than $n$ and relatively prime to $n$. Since $\operatorname{gcd}(a, n)=1$, there is a positive integer $k, 1 \leq k \leq p-1$ such that $r^{k} \equiv a(\bmod p)$. Then $r^{k} \equiv a(\bmod p)$ for some integer $k$, with $1 \leq k \leq p-1$.

Thus,

$$
\begin{equation*}
r^{k(p-1) / 2}=a^{(p-1) / 2} \equiv 1(\bmod p) \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Hence, order of $r$, that is, $p-1$ must divide the exponent $k(p-1) / 2$ of $r$ in(1). Thus $k$ has to be even. Let $k=2 j$. Then

$$
\left(r^{j}\right)^{2}=r^{2 j}=r^{k} \equiv a(\bmod p) .
$$

Thus $r^{j}$ is a solution of quadratic congruence $x^{2} \equiv a(\bmod p)$. Therefore, $a$ is a quadratic residue of $p$.

Note : Suppose that $p$ is an odd prime and $\operatorname{gcd}(a, p)=1$, then

$$
\begin{aligned}
& a^{p-1}-1 \equiv 0(\bmod p) \\
& \Rightarrow\left(a^{(p-1) / 2}-1\right)\left(a^{(p-1) / 2}+1\right) \equiv 0(\bmod p) \\
& \Rightarrow a^{(p-1) / 2} \equiv 1(\bmod p) \text { or } a^{(p-1) / 2} \equiv-1(\bmod p)
\end{aligned}
$$

Note that if $a$ satisfies both $a^{(p-1) / 2} \equiv 1(\bmod p)$ and $a^{(p-1) / 2} \equiv-1(\bmod p)$ then we would have $1 \equiv-1(\bmod p)$ which is absurd. Hence, exactly, one of the two holds. Therefore, if $a^{(p-1) / 2} \nexists 1(\bmod p)$ then we must have $a^{(p-1) / 2} \equiv-1(\bmod p)$. Therefore, the integer $a$ is quadratic non-residue of $p$ iff $a^{(p-1) / 2} \equiv-1(\bmod p)$. Thus we have

Corollary : Let $p$ be an odd prime and $\operatorname{gcd}(a, p)=1$. Then $a$ is quadratic residue or nonresidue according to whether.

$$
a^{(p-1) / 2}=1(\bmod p) \text { or } a^{(p-1) / 2}=-1(\bmod p)
$$

Note: We have seen that 3 is quadratic residue and 2 is non-residue of 13 . Observe that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 2^{(13-1) / 2}=2^{6}=64 \equiv 12 \equiv-1(\bmod 13) \\
\text { and } \quad & 3^{(13-1) / 2}=3^{6}=(27)^{2} \equiv(1)^{2} \equiv 1(\bmod 13)
\end{aligned}
$$

Example: Solve $x^{2}+7 x+10 \equiv 0(\bmod 11)$.
Solution : Consider $x^{2}+7 x+10 \equiv 0(\bmod 11)$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \Rightarrow 4 x^{2}+28 x+40 \equiv 0(\bmod 11) \\
& \Rightarrow(2 x+7)^{2} \equiv 9(\bmod 11) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Now consider the congruence,

$$
\begin{equation*}
y^{2} \equiv 9(\bmod 11) \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $y=2 x+7$.
Observe that $y \equiv 3,8(\bmod 11)$ are solution of $\mathrm{Eq}^{\mathrm{n}} .(1)$.
Now, we consider $2 x+7 \equiv 3(\bmod 11)$ and $2 x+7 \equiv 8(\bmod 11)$. These are equivalent to,

$$
2 x \equiv-4(\bmod 11) \text { and } 2 x \equiv 1(\bmod 11)
$$

Consider $2 x \equiv-4(\bmod 11) \Rightarrow x \equiv-2(\bmod 11)$

$$
\Rightarrow x \equiv 9(\bmod 11)
$$

and $2 x \equiv 1(\bmod 11) \Rightarrow 6(2 x) \equiv 6(1)(\bmod 11) \Rightarrow x \equiv 12 x \equiv 6(\bmod 11)$

$$
\Rightarrow x \equiv 6(\bmod 11) .
$$

Thus $x \equiv 6,9(\bmod 11)$ are the solutions of given quadratic congruence.

### 8.2 THE LEGENDRE SYMBOL AND ITS PROPERTIES :

Definition : Let $p$ be an odd prime and let $\operatorname{gcd}(a, p)=1$. The Legendre symbol $(a / p)$ is defined by

$$
(a / p)= \begin{cases}1 & \text { If } a \text { is quadratic residue of } p \\ -1 & \text { If } a \text { is quadratic non-residue of } p\end{cases}
$$

Legendre symbol is also written as $\left(\frac{a}{p}\right)$ or $(a / p)$. In the symbol $(a / p), a$ is called numerator and $p$ is called denominator.
e.g. Let us take $p=13$. Then

$$
(1 / 13)=(3 / 13)=(4 / 13)=(9 / 13)=(10 / 13)=(12 / 13)=1
$$

and $\quad(2 / 13)=(5 / 13)=(6 / 13)=(7 / 13)=(8 / 13)=(11 / 13)=-1$
Recall that $1,3,4,9,10,12$ are quadratic residues and $2,5,6,7,8,11$ are nonresidues.

Remark : For $p \mid a$, we have purposely left the symbol $(a / p)$ undefined. Some authors define $(a / p)=0$ in case $p \mid a$. The advantage of this is that the number of solutions of $x^{2} \equiv a(\bmod p)$ is given by $1+(a / p)$. Observe that if $\left(\frac{a}{p}\right)=1$ then there are 2 solutions, if $\left(\frac{a}{p}\right)=-1$, number of solutions is zero. However, if $p \mid a$, then $x^{2} \equiv a(\bmod p)$ becomes $x^{2} \equiv 0(\bmod p)$ and in this case there is only one solution.

Theorem : Let $p$ be an odd prime and let $a$ and $b$ be integers that are relatively prime to $p$. Then the Legendre symbol has the following properties:
(a) If $a \equiv b(\bmod p)$, then $(a / p)=(b / p)$,
(b) $\quad\left(a^{2} / p\right)=1$,
(c) $\quad(a / p) \equiv a^{(p-1) / 2}(\bmod p)$,
(d) $(a b / p)=(a / p)(b / p)$,
(e) $\quad(1 / p)=1$ and $(-1 / p)=(-1)^{(p-1) / 2}$.

Proof: (a) If $a \equiv b(\bmod p)$, then the congruences $x^{2} \equiv a(\bmod p)$ and $x^{2} \equiv b(\bmod p)$ have exactly the same solutions if any at all. Thus $x^{2} \equiv a(\bmod p)$ and $x^{2} \equiv b(\bmod p)$ are both solvable, or neither one has a solution, which is exactly $(a / p)=(b / p)$.
(b) Since $a$ trivially satisfies $x^{2} \equiv a^{2}(\bmod p)$ we have $\left(a^{2} / p\right)=1$.
(c) We know that $a^{(p-1) / 2} \equiv 1(\bmod p)$ or $a^{(p-1) / 2} \equiv-1(\bmod p)$ according as $a$ is quadratic residue or non-residue of $p$. Hence, $(a / p) \equiv a^{(p-1) / 2}(\bmod p)$.
(d) $(a b / p) \equiv(a b)^{(p-1) / 2} \equiv a^{(p-1) / 2} b^{(p-1) / 2} \equiv(a / p)(b / p)(\bmod p)$. Since Legendre symbol assumes values 1 and -1 only, if $(a b / p) \neq(a / p)(b / p)$, we would have $1 \equiv-1(\bmod p)$ which is absurd because $p>2$. Therefore, we must have $(a b / p)=(a / p)(b / p)$.
(e) Since $\left(a^{2} / p\right)=1$, for $a=1$, we have $(1 / p)=1$.

For the other part let $a=-1$ so that

$$
\begin{equation*}
(-1 / p) \equiv(-1)^{(p-1) / 2}(\bmod p) \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since the quantities $(-1 / p)$ and $(-1)^{(p-1) / 2}$ are either 1 or -1 , Eqn. (1) implies that $(-1 / p)=(-1)^{(p-1) / 2}$.

Note: $\left(a b^{2} / p\right)=(a / p)\left(b^{2} / p\right)=(a / p)$.
Corollary : If $p$ is an odd prime, then

$$
(-1 / p)= \begin{cases}1 & \text { if } p \equiv 1(\bmod 4) \\ -1 & \text { if } p \equiv 3(\bmod 4) .\end{cases}
$$

Note: In view of above corollary, we obtain, the quadratic congruence $x^{2} \equiv-1(\bmod p)$ has a solution iff $p$ is of the form $4 \mathrm{k}+1$.

Example : Show that $x^{2} \equiv-46(\bmod 17)$ has no solution.
Solution : The given problem is equivalent to evaluating ( $-46 / 17$ ). We know

$$
(-46 / 17)=(-1 / 17)(46 / 17)=(46 / 17) \quad\left((-1 / 17)=(-1)^{(17-1) / 2}=(-1)^{8}=1\right)
$$

Since $46 \equiv 12(\bmod 17)$, we have

$$
(46 / 17)=(12 / 17)
$$

Thus $\quad(12 / 17)=\left(3 \times 2^{2} / 17\right)=(3 / 17)\left(2^{2} / 17\right)=(3 / 17)$
But $\quad(3 / 17) \equiv 3^{(17-1) / 2} \equiv 3^{8} \equiv(81)^{2} \equiv(-4)^{2} \equiv-1(\bmod 17)$
Therefore, $(3 / 17)=-1$ and consequently, $(46 / 17)=-1$.
Thus $x^{2} \equiv-46(\bmod 17)$ has no solution.

Theorem : There are infinitely many primes of the form $4 \mathrm{k}+1$.
Proof: Suppose that there are finitely many such primes say $p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{n}$ and consider,

$$
N=\left(2 p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{n}\right)^{2}+1
$$

Clearly, N is odd, so that there exists some odd prime $p$ with $p \mid \mathrm{N}$. To put it another way,

$$
\left(2 p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{n}\right)^{2} \equiv-1(\bmod p)
$$

Thus $(-1 / p)=1$. We know that $(-1 / p)=1$ only if $p$ is of the form $4 \mathrm{k}+1$.
Hence, $p$ must be one of $p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{n}$ but then $p \mid N-\left(2 p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{n}\right)^{2} \equiv 1$ or $p \mid 1$. Which is absurd. Hence, the result.

Theorem : If $p$ is an odd prime, then $\sum_{a=1}^{p-1}(a / p)=0$.
Hence, there are $(p-1) / 2$ quadratic residues and $(p-1) / 2$ quadratic non-residues of $p$.

Proof: Let $r$ be a primitive root of $p$. We know that the powers $r, r^{2}, \ldots, r^{p-1}$ are congruent modulo $p$ to $1,2, \ldots, p-1$ in some order. That is $r, r^{2}, \ldots, r^{p-1}$ are just a permutation of the integers $1,2, \ldots, p-1$ modulo $p$. This for any $a$ lying between 1 and $p-1$, inclusive there is a unique positive integer $k(1 \leq k \leq p-1)$, such that $a \equiv r^{k}(\bmod p)$.

Since $r$ is a primitive root of $p$, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
r^{p-1}-1 \equiv 0(\bmod p) & \Rightarrow\left(r^{(p-1) / 2}-1\right)\left(r^{(p-1) / 2}+1\right) \equiv 0(\bmod p) \\
& \Rightarrow r^{(p-1) / 2} \equiv 1(\bmod p) \text { or } r^{(p-1) / 2} \equiv-1(\bmod p)
\end{aligned}
$$

As $r$ is primitive root of $p, r^{(p-1) / 2} \nexists 1(\bmod p)$ and hence

$$
r^{(p-1) / 2} \equiv-1(\bmod p) .
$$

Thus $\quad(a / p)=\left(r^{k} / p\right) \equiv\left(r^{k}\right)^{(p-1) / 2}=\left(r^{(p-1) / 2}\right)^{k} \equiv(-1)^{k}(\bmod p)$.
Therefore, $(a / p)=(-1)^{k}=\left(r^{k} / p\right)$ are equal to 1 or -1 .
Hence, $\sum_{a=1}^{p-1}(a / p)=\sum_{k=1}^{p-1}(-1)^{k}=0$.
and the theorem is proved.
Corollary: The quadratic residues of an odd prime $p$ are congruent modulo $p$ to the even powers of the primitive root $r$ of $p$; the quadratic non-residues are congruent to the odd powers of $r$.
Proof: The result follows immediately from

$$
(a / p)=\left(r^{k} / p\right) \equiv(-1)^{k}(\bmod p) .
$$

## Theorem (Gauss' Lemma) :

Let $p$ be an odd prime and let $\operatorname{gcd}(a, p)=1$. If $n$ denotes the number of integers in the set.

$$
S=\left\{a, 2 a, 3 a, \ldots,\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right) a\right\}
$$

whose remainders upon division by $p$ exceed $p / 2$, then

$$
(a / p)=(-1)^{n} .
$$

Proof: Since $\operatorname{gcd}(a, p)=1$, we find that none of the $(p-1) / 2$ integers in $S$ is congruent to zero and no two are congruent to each other modulo $p$. Let $r_{1}, r_{2}, \ldots, r_{m}$ be those remainders upon division by $p$ such that $0<r_{i}<p / 2$ and let $s_{1}, s_{2}, \ldots, s_{n}$ be those remainders such that $p / 2<s_{i}<p$.

Then $m+n=(p-1) / 2$ and the integer.

$$
r_{1}, r_{2}, \ldots, r_{m}, p-s_{1}, p-s_{2}, \ldots, p-s_{n}
$$

are all positive and less than $p / 2$.
To prove that these integers are all distinct it suffices to show that no $p-s_{i}$ is equal to any $r_{j}$. Assume on the contrary that,

$$
p-s_{i}=r_{j}
$$

for some choice of $i$ and $j$. Then there exist integers $u$ and $v$, with $1 \leq u, v \leq(p-1) / 2$ satisfying $s_{i} \equiv u a(\bmod p)$ and $r_{j} \equiv v a(\bmod p)$. Hence,

$$
(u+v) a \equiv s_{i}+r_{j}=p \equiv 0(\bmod p)
$$

which says that $u+v \equiv 0(\bmod p)$. But the latter congruence can not take place because $1<u+v \leq p-1$.

Note that $(p-1) / 2$ numbers $r_{1}, r_{2}, \ldots, r_{m}, p-s_{1}, p-s_{2}, \ldots, p-s_{n}$ are simply the integers $1,2, \ldots,(p-1) / 2$, not necessarily in order of appearance. Thus, their product is $\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right)!$.

Therefore, $\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right)!=r_{1} \ldots r_{m}\left(p-s_{1}\right) \ldots\left(p-s_{n}\right)$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \equiv r_{1} \ldots r_{m}\left(-s_{1}\right) \ldots\left(-s_{n}\right)(\bmod p) \\
& \equiv(-1)^{n} r_{1} \ldots r_{m} s_{1} \ldots s_{n}(\bmod p) .
\end{aligned}
$$

But, we know that $r_{1}, \ldots . r_{m}, s_{1}, \ldots, s_{n}$ are congruent modulo $p$ to $a, 2 a, \ldots .,\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right) a$, in some order, so that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right)! & \equiv(-1)^{n} a \cdot 2 a \ldots \ldots\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right) a(\bmod p) \\
& \equiv(-1)^{n} a^{(p-1) / 2}\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right)!(\bmod p)
\end{aligned}
$$

Since $\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right)$ ! is relatively prime to $p$, we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 1 \equiv(-1)^{n} a^{(p-1) / 2}(\bmod p) \\
& \Rightarrow a^{(p-1) / 2} \equiv(-1)^{n}(\bmod p)
\end{aligned}
$$

By Euler's criteria, we obtain,

$$
(a / p) \equiv a^{(p-1) / 2} \equiv(-1)^{n}(\bmod p)
$$

Thus $\quad(a / p)=(-1)^{n}$.
Let us consider the case $p=13$ and $a=5$.

Then $(p-1) / 2=6$, so that $s=\{5,10,15,20,25,30\}$.
Modulo 13, the members of S are the same as the integers 5, 10, 2, 7, 12, 4. Three of these are greater than $13 / 2$. Hence, $n=3$ and consequently,

$$
(5 / 13)=(-1)^{3}=-1 .
$$

Theorem : If $p$ is an odd prime, then

$$
(2 / p)= \begin{cases}1 & \text { if } p \equiv 1(\bmod 8) \text { or } p \equiv 7(\bmod 8) \\ -1 & \text { if } p \equiv 3(\bmod 8) \text { or } p \equiv 5(\bmod 8) .\end{cases}
$$

Proof: By Gauss' Lemma, $(2 / p)=(-1)^{n}$, where $n$ is the number of integers in the set.

$$
S=\left\{1 \cdot 2,2 \cdot 2,3 \cdot 2, \ldots,\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right) \cdot 2\right\}
$$

which upon division by $p$ leave remainder greater that $p / 2$. The members of $S$ are all less than $p$, so that it suffices to count the number that are greater than $p / 2$.

For $1 \leq k \leq\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right)$, we have $2 k<p / 2$ iff $k<p / 4$. Therefore, there are $[p / 4]$ integers in S less than $p / 2$; hence $n=\frac{p-1}{2}-\left[\frac{p}{4}\right]$ is the number of integers that are greater than $p / 2$.

Now, we have four possibilities, for any odd prime has one of the forms $8 k+1$, $8 k+3,8 k+5$ or $8 k+7$. A simple calculation shows that,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { If } p=8 k+1 \text {, then } n=4 k-\left[2 k+\frac{1}{4}\right]=4 k-2 k=2 k . \\
& \text { If } p=8 k+3 \text {, then } n=(4 k+1)-\left[2 k+\frac{3}{4}\right]=4 k+1-2 k=2 k+1 .
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { If } p=8 k+5 \text {, then } n=(4 k+2)-\left[2 k+1+\frac{1}{4}\right]=4 k+2-(2 k-1)=2 k+1 \\
& \text { If } p=8 k+7 \text {, then } n=4 k+3-\left[2 k+1+\frac{3}{4}\right]=4 k+3-(2 k-1)=2 k+2
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus when $p$ is of the form $8 k+1$ or $8 k+7, n$ is even and so $(2 / p)=1$ and in case $p$ is of the form $8 k+3$ or $8 k+5, n$ is odd and so $(2 / p)=-1$.

Corollary : If $p$ is an odd prime, then

$$
(2 / p)=(-1)^{\left(p^{2}-1\right) / 8}
$$

Proof: Suppose $p$ is of the form $8 k \pm 1$, then

$$
\frac{p^{2}-1}{8}=\frac{(8 k \pm 1)^{2}-1}{8}=\frac{64 k^{2} \pm 16 k}{8}=8 k^{2} \pm 2 k
$$

Which is an even integer and hence

$$
(-1)^{\left(p^{2}-1\right) / 8}=1=(2 / p)
$$

On the other hand, if $p$ is of the form $8 k \pm 3$, then

$$
\frac{p^{2}-1}{8}=\frac{(8 k \pm 3)^{2}-1}{8}=\frac{64 k^{2} \pm 48 k+8}{8}=8 k^{2} \pm 6 k+1
$$

which is odd, so that $(-1)^{\left(p^{2}-1\right) / 8}=-1=(2 / p)$.

Theorem : If $p$ and $2 p+1$ are both odd primes, then the integer $(-1)^{(p-1) / 2} \cdot 2$ is a primitive root of $2 p+1$.

Proof: For the sake of convenience, let us put $q=2 p+1$.
We distinguish the cases : $p \equiv 1(\bmod 4)$ and $p \equiv 3(\bmod 4)$

Case I : Let $p \equiv 1(\bmod 4)$. In this case $(-1)^{(p-1) / 2} \cdot 2=2$. Because $\phi(q)=q-1=2 p$, the order of 2 modulo $q$ is one of the numbers $1,2, p$ or $2 p$. We know

$$
(2 / p) \equiv 2^{(q-1) / 2} \equiv 2^{p}(\bmod q)
$$

But in the present setting, $q \equiv 3(\bmod 8)$, hence, the Legendre symbol $(2 / q)=-1$. It follows that $2^{p} \equiv-1(\bmod q)$ and therefore 2 can not have order $p$ modulo $q$. The order of 2 being neither $1,22^{2} \equiv 1(\bmod p) \Rightarrow q^{13}$ which is not possible) nor $p$.

Therefore, order of 2 modulo $q$ is $2 p$. Thus 2 is aprimitive root of $q$.
Case II : Let $p \equiv 3(\bmod 4)$. In this case $(-1)^{(p-1) / 2} \cdot 2=-2$ and

$$
(-2)^{p} \equiv(-2 / q)=(-1 / q)(2 / q)(\bmod q)
$$

Since $q \equiv 7(\bmod 8)$, we have $(-1 / q)=-1$ and $(2 / q)=1$.

Thus $(-2)^{p} \equiv-1(\bmod q)$. Arguing as in the first case, we conclude that -2 is a primitive root of $q$.

Note : An odd prime $p$ such that $2 p+1$ is also prime is called Germain prime after the French number theorist Sophie Germain (1776-1831).

Theorem : There are infinitely many primes of the form $8 k-1$.
Proof : Suppose on the contrary that there are only a finite numbers of primes of the form $8 k-1$ namely $p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{n}$ and consider, $N=\left(4 p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{n}\right)^{2}-2$.

There exist atleast one odd prime divisor $p$ of N , so that

$$
\left(4 p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{n}\right)^{2} \equiv 2(\bmod p)
$$

In other words $(2 / p)=1$. Hence, $p \equiv \pm 1(\bmod 8)$.
If all the odd prime divisors of N were of the form $8 k+1$, then N would be of the form $8 a+1$, this is clearly impossible because N is of the form $16 a-2$.

Thus, N must have a prime divisor $q$ of the form $8 k-1$. But $q \mid \mathrm{N}$ and $q /\left(4 p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{n}\right)^{2}$ leads to the contradiction that $q \mid 2$.

Lemma : If $p$ is an odd prime and $a$ is an odd integer, with $\operatorname{gcd}(a, p)=1$, then

$$
(a / p)=(-1)^{\sum_{k=1}^{(p-1) / 2}[k a / p]} \text {. }
$$

Proof : Consider the set of integers,

$$
S=\left\{a, 2 a, \ldots,\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right) a\right\} .
$$

By division algorithm, we have

$$
k a=q_{k} p+t_{k} \quad 1 \leq t_{k} \leq p-1 .
$$

Then $\frac{k a}{p}=q_{k}+\frac{t_{k}}{p} \Rightarrow\left[\frac{k a}{p}\right]=q_{k}$ for $1 \leq k \leq\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right)$.
Thus we can write

$$
\begin{equation*}
k a=\left[\frac{k a}{p}\right] p+t_{k} . \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

If $t_{k}<p / 2$, then it is one of $r_{1}, r_{2}, \ldots, r_{m}$ and if $t_{k}>p / 2$, then it is one of the integers $s_{1}, \ldots, s_{n}$.

Taking the sum of $(p-1) / 2$ equations in (1),

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{k=1}^{(p-1) / 2} k a=\sum_{k=1}^{(p-1) / 2}\left[\frac{k a}{p}\right] p+\sum_{k=1}^{m} r_{k}+\sum_{k=1}^{n} s_{k} . \tag{2}
\end{equation*}
$$

We know that $(p-1) / 2$ numbers,

$$
r_{1}, \ldots, r_{m}, p-s_{1}, \ldots, p-s_{n}
$$

are just rearrangement of the integers $1,2, \ldots,(p-1) / 2$.
Hence,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{k=1}^{(p-1) / 2} k=\sum_{k=1}^{m} r_{k}+\sum_{k=1}^{n}\left(p-s_{k}\right)=p n+\sum_{k=1}^{m} r_{k}-\sum_{k=1}^{n} s_{k} . \tag{3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Subtracting Eqn. (3) from Eqn. (2), we obtain,

$$
\begin{equation*}
(a-1) \sum_{k=1}^{(p-1) / 2} k=p\left(\sum_{k=1}^{(p-1) / 2}\left[\frac{k a}{p}\right]-n\right)+2 \sum_{k=1}^{n} s_{k} . \tag{4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since both $a$ and $p$ are odd integers, we have,

$$
p \equiv a \equiv 1(\bmod 2)
$$

and therefore Eqn. (4) can be written as,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 0 \cdot \sum_{k=1}^{(p-1) / 2} k \equiv 1 \cdot\left(\sum_{k=1}^{(p-1) / 2}\left[\frac{k a}{p}\right]-n\right)(\bmod 2) \\
& \Rightarrow n \equiv \sum_{k=1}^{(p-1) / 2}\left[\frac{k a}{p}\right](\bmod 2) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus by Gauss' lemma,

$$
(a / p)=(-1)^{n}=(-1)^{\sum_{k=1}^{(p-1) / 2}\left[\frac{k a}{p}\right]} \text {. }
$$

This proves the Lemma.

Example : Let us consider $p=13$ and $a=5$. Here $\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right)=6$.
Therefore, it is necessary to consider $\left[\frac{k a}{p}\right]$ for $k=1,2, \ldots . ., 6$. Thus,

$$
\left[\frac{5}{13}\right]=\left[\frac{10}{13}\right]=0,\left[\frac{15}{13}\right]=\left[\frac{20}{13}\right]=\left[\frac{25}{13}\right]=1,\left[\frac{30}{13}\right]=2 .
$$

Therefore,

$$
(5 / 13)=(-1)^{0+0+1+1+1+2}=(-1)^{5}=-1 .
$$

## QUADRATIC RECIPROCITY LAW :

If $p$ and $q$ are distinct odd primes, then,

$$
(p / q)(q / p)=(-1)\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right)\left(\frac{q-1}{2}\right) .
$$

Proof: Consider the rectangle in the $x y$ co-ordinate plane whose vertices are $(0,0),(p / 2,0)$, ( $0, q / 2$ ), and ( $p / 2, q / 2$ ).

Let R denote the region within this rectangle, not including any of the bounding lines. The general plan of attack is to count the number of lattice points, that is, the points whose coordinates are integers, inside R in two different ways. Because $p$ and $q$ are both odd, the lattice points in R consist of all points $(n, m)$, where $1 \leq n \leq\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right)$ and $1 \leq m \leq\left(\frac{q-1}{2}\right)$.

Clearly, the number of such points is $\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right)\left(\frac{q-1}{2}\right)$.
Consider the diagonal D from $(0,0)$ to $(p / 2, q / 2)$ which has the equation $y=\left(\frac{q}{p}\right) x$, or equivalently $p y=q x$.

Because $\operatorname{gcd}(p, q)=1$, none of the lattice points inside R will lie on D , for $p / q x \Rightarrow p / x$ and $q / p y \Rightarrow q / y$ and clearly there exist no such $x$ and $y$ such that $(x, y) \in R$. Suppose that $\mathrm{T}_{1}$ denotes the portion of R that is below the diagonal D , and $\mathrm{T}_{2}$ denote the portion above. By what we have just seen, it suffices to count the lattice points inside each of these triangles.

The number of integers in the interval $0<y<\frac{k q}{p}$ is equal to $\left[\frac{k q}{p}\right]$. Thus for $1 \leq k \leq\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right)$, there are precisely $\left[\frac{k q}{p}\right]$ lattice points in $\mathrm{T}_{1}$, directly above $(k, 0)$ and below D ; in other words, lying on the vertical line segment from $(k, 0)$ to $\left(k, \frac{k q}{p}\right)$.It follows that the total number of lattice points contained in $\mathrm{T}_{1}$ is $\sum_{k=1}^{\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right)}\left[\frac{k q}{p}\right]$.


A similar calculation, with the roles of $p$ and $q$ interchanged, shows that the number of lattice points within $T_{2}$ is

$$
\sum_{j=1}^{\frac{q-1}{2}}\left[\frac{j p}{q}\right]
$$

This accounts for all of the lattice points inside $R$, so that

$$
\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right)\left(\frac{q-1}{2}\right)=\sum_{k=1}^{\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right)}\left[\frac{k q}{p}\right]+\sum_{j=1}^{\left(\frac{q-1}{2}\right)}\left[\frac{j p}{q}\right] .
$$

Now by Gauss' Lemma, we obtain,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left(\frac{p}{q}\right)\left(\frac{q}{p}\right)=(-1)^{\left(\frac{q-1}{2}\right)}\left[\frac{j p}{\left.\sum_{j=1}^{q}\right]} \cdot(-1)^{\left(\frac{p-1}{\sum_{k=1}^{2}}\right)\left[\frac{k q}{p}\right]}\right. \\
& =(-1)^{\left(\frac{q-1}{\sum_{j=1}^{2}}\right)\left[\frac{j p}{q}\right]+\sum_{k=1}^{\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right)}\left[\frac{k q}{p}\right]} \\
& =(-1)^{\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right)\left(\frac{q-1}{2}\right)} \text {. }
\end{aligned}
$$

This proves Quadratic Reciprocity Law.

Corollary 1: If $p$ and $q$ are distinct odd primes then,

$$
\left(\frac{p}{q}\right)\left(\frac{q}{p}\right)= \begin{cases}1 & \text { if } p \equiv 1(\bmod 4) \text { or } q \equiv 1(\bmod 4) \\ -1 & \text { if } p \equiv q \equiv 3(\bmod 4) .\end{cases}
$$

Proof: Note that $\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right)\left(\frac{q-1}{2}\right)$ is even if and only if at least one of $p$ and $q$ is of the form $4 k+1$ and if both are of the form $4 k+3$, the product $\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right)\left(\frac{q-1}{2}\right)$ is odd.

Corollary 2: If $p$ and $q$ are odd primes, then,

$$
\left(\frac{p}{q}\right)= \begin{cases}\left(\frac{q}{p}\right) & \text { if } p \equiv 1(\bmod 4) \text { or } q \equiv 1(\bmod 4) \\ -\left(\frac{q}{p}\right) & \text { if } p \equiv q \equiv 1(\bmod 4)\end{cases}
$$

Proof : Note that $\left(\frac{p}{q}\right)^{2}=1=\left(\frac{q}{p}\right)^{2}$ so that the result follows from above corollary.

Note : Let $p$ be an odd prime and $a \neq \pm 1$ to be an integer not divisible by $p$. Suppose that $a$ has the factorization.

Therefore, $a= \pm 2^{k_{0}} p_{1}^{k_{1}} p_{2}^{k_{2}} \ldots p_{r}^{{ }^{k_{r}}}$ where $p_{i}$ are distinct primes. Because the legendre symbol is multiplicative.

$$
\left(\frac{a}{p}\right)=\left( \pm \frac{1}{p}\right)\left(\frac{2}{p}\right)^{k_{0}}\left(\frac{p_{1}}{p}\right)^{k_{1}} \ldots\left(\frac{p_{r}}{p}\right)^{k_{r}} .
$$

To calculate $\left(\frac{a}{p}\right)$, we have only to calculate each of the symbols $\left(-\frac{1}{p}\right),\left(\frac{2}{p}\right)$ and $\left(\frac{p_{i}}{p}\right)$. The values of $\left(-\frac{1}{p}\right)$ and $\left(\frac{2}{p}\right)$ were discussed earlier, so that one stumbling block is $\left(\frac{p_{i}}{p}\right)$, where $p_{i}$ and $p$ are distinct odd primes, this is where the Quadratic Reciprocity Law enters. Corollary 2 allows us to replace $\left(\frac{p_{i}}{p}\right)$ by a new Legendre symbol having a smaller denominator. Through continued inversion and division, the computation can be reduced to that of the known quantities $\left(-\frac{1}{q}\right),\left(\frac{1}{q}\right),\left(\frac{2}{q}\right)$.

Consider the Legendre symbol $\left(\frac{29}{53}\right)$. Here $29 \equiv 1(\bmod 4)$ and $53 \equiv 1(\bmod 4)$, we see that,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(\frac{29}{53}\right) & =\left(\frac{53}{29}\right)=\left(\frac{24}{29}\right)=\left(\frac{2}{29}\right)\left(\frac{3}{29}\right)\left(\frac{4}{29}\right) \\
& =\left(\frac{2}{29}\right)\left(\frac{3}{29}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Since $29 \equiv 5(\bmod 8),\left(\frac{2}{29}\right)=-1$. And

$$
\left(\frac{3}{29}\right)=\left(\frac{29}{3}\right)=\left(\frac{2}{3}\right)=-1(\text { Since } 3 \equiv 3(\bmod 8))
$$

Thus, $\left(\frac{29}{53}\right)=(-1)(-1)=1$.

Theorem 1: If $p \neq 3$ is an odd prime, then

$$
\left(\frac{3}{p}\right)= \begin{cases}1 & \text { if } p \equiv \pm 1(\bmod 12) \\ -1 & \text { if } p \equiv \pm 5(\bmod 12)\end{cases}
$$

Proof: Let $p \neq 3$ be an odd prime. Since $3 \equiv 3(\bmod 4)$ we have,

$$
\left(\frac{3}{p}\right)=\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\left(\frac{p}{3}\right) \quad \text { if } p \equiv 1(\bmod 4) \\
-\left(\frac{p}{3}\right) \text { if } p \equiv 1(\bmod 4)
\end{array}\right.
$$

Now $p \equiv 1(\bmod 3)$ or $p \equiv 2(\bmod 3)$, therefore

$$
\left(\frac{p}{3}\right)= \begin{cases}1 & \text { if } p \equiv 1(\bmod 3) \\ -1 & \text { if } p \equiv 2(\bmod 3)\end{cases}
$$

Thus $\left(\frac{3}{p}\right)=1$ if and only if

$$
p \equiv 1(\bmod 4) \text { and } p \equiv 1(\bmod 3) \text { or } p \equiv 3(\bmod 4) \text { and } p \equiv 2(\bmod 3) \text {. }
$$

Thus $p \equiv \pm 1(\bmod 12)$. Hence, the result follows.

## QUADRATIC CONGRUENCES WITH COMPOSITE MODULI

In this section we shall be dealing with composite moduli. We begin with,
Theorem : If $p$ is an odd prime and $\operatorname{gcd}(a, p)=1$, then the congruence $x^{2} \equiv a\left(\bmod p^{n}\right)$, $n \geq 1$ has a solution if and only if $\left(\frac{a}{p}\right)=1$.

Proof: Suppose $x^{2} \equiv a\left(\bmod p^{n}\right)$ has a solution, then so does $x^{2} \equiv a(\bmod p)$, in fact the same solution, thus $\left(\frac{a}{p}\right)=1$.

Conversely, suppose that $\left(\frac{a}{p}\right)=1$. We shall use induction to prove the result. Since $\left(\frac{a}{p}\right)=1, x^{2} \equiv a(\bmod p)$ has a solution, so that result holds for $n=1$. Let the result hold for $n=k \geq 1$, that is, $x^{2} \equiv a\left(\bmod p^{k}\right)$ has a solution $x_{0}$. Then

$$
x_{0}^{2} \equiv a\left(\bmod p^{k}\right)
$$

So that $x_{0}^{2}=a+b p^{k}$ for some integer $b$.
Since $\operatorname{gcd}\left(2 x_{0}, p\right)=1$, the congruence $2 x_{0} y \equiv-b(\bmod p)$ has a unique solution $x_{0}$ modulo $p$. Consider,

$$
x_{1}=x_{0}+y_{0} p^{k}
$$

Then $\quad x_{1}^{2}=x_{0}^{2}+2 x_{0} y_{0} p^{k}+y_{0}^{2} p^{2 k}$

$$
=a+\left(b+2 x_{0} y_{0}\right) p^{k}+y_{0}^{2} p^{2 k} .
$$

In view of $2 x_{0} y \equiv-b(\bmod p), p \mid 2 x_{0} y_{0}+b$. Thus, we obtain

$$
x_{1}^{2} \equiv a\left(\bmod p^{k+1}\right) .
$$

Therefore, $x^{2} \equiv a\left(\bmod p^{k+1}\right)$ has a solution for $n=k+1$.
Hence, by induction the result holds for any $n$.
We shall now state and prove some results for $p=2$.

Theorem : Let $a$ be an odd integer. Then we have the following.
a) $\quad x^{2} \equiv a(\bmod 2)$ always has a solution.
b) $\quad x^{2} \equiv a(\bmod 4)$ has a solution if and only if $a \equiv 1(\bmod 4)$.
c) $\quad x^{2} \equiv a\left(\bmod 2^{n}\right)$, for $n \geq 3$, has a solution if and only if $a \equiv 1(\bmod 8)$.

## Proof :

a) The result is trivial for any odd $x=2 k+1$ and $x=2 l+1$, $x^{2}-a=4 k^{2}+4 k-4 l^{2}-4 l$ is always divisible by 2 .
b) Suppose $x^{2} \equiv a(\bmod 4)$, then as square of an odd integer is of the form $4 k+1, a$ must be of the same form, that is $a \equiv 1(\bmod 4)$.

Conversely, suppose $a \equiv 1(\bmod 4)$ then there are two solutions modulo 4, namely, $x=1$ and $x=3$.
c) We know that square of an odd integer is congruent to 1 modulo $8, a$ must be of the form $8 k+1$. Conversely, suppose $a \equiv 1(\bmod 8)$, we shall use induction on $n$. Let $n=3$, then $1,3,5,7$ are solutions of $x^{2} \equiv 1(\bmod 8)$. Let the result hold for $n=k \geq 1$, then $x^{2} \equiv a\left(\bmod 2^{k}\right)$ admits a solution $x_{0}$, that is, $x_{0}^{2}=a+b 2^{k}$ for some integers $b$. Since $a$ is odd, so does $x_{0}$. Therefore, $x_{0} y \equiv-b(\bmod 2)$ admits a unique solution $y_{0}$.

Consider

$$
\begin{aligned}
x_{1} & =x_{0}+y_{0} 2^{k-1} \text { and } \\
x_{1}^{2} & =x_{0}^{2}+2 x_{0} y_{0} 2^{k-1}+y_{0}^{2} 2^{2 k-2} \\
& =a+b \cdot 2^{k}+x_{0} y_{0} 2^{k}+y_{0}^{2} 2^{2 k-2} \\
& =a+\left(b+x_{0} y_{0}\right) 2^{k}+y_{0}^{2} \cdot 2^{2 k-2}
\end{aligned}
$$

Since $2 / x_{0} y_{0}+b$ we have

$$
x_{1}^{2} \equiv a\left(\bmod 2^{k+1}\right)
$$

Note that $2 k-2=k+1+k-3 \geq k+1$.
Thus the result holds for $n=k+1$. Therefore, by principle of induction, the result holds for any $n$.

Theorem : Let $n=2^{k_{0}} p_{1}^{k_{1}} p_{2}^{k_{2}} \ldots . . p_{r}^{k_{r}}$ be the prime factorization of $n>1$ and let $\operatorname{gcd}(a, n)=1$.Then $x^{2} \equiv a(\bmod n)$ is solvable if and only if
a) $\quad\left(\frac{a}{p_{i}}\right)=1$ for $i=1,2, \ldots ., r$
b) $\quad a \equiv 1(\bmod 4)$ if $4 \mid n$, but $8 \| n ; a \equiv 1(\bmod 8)$ if $8 \mid n$.

Proof: Observe that the problemofsolving quadratic congruence $x^{2} \equiv a(\bmod n)$ is equivalent to that of solving system of congruences.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& x^{2} \equiv a\left(\bmod 2^{k_{0}}\right) \\
& x^{2} \equiv a\left(\bmod p_{1}^{k_{1}}\right) \\
& x^{2} \equiv a\left(\bmod p_{2}^{k_{2}}\right) \\
& \vdots \\
& x^{2} \equiv a\left(\bmod p_{r}^{k_{r}}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

In view of last two results, the result follows.
Example : Show that 7 and 18 are the only incongruent solution of $x^{2} \equiv-1\left(\bmod 5^{2}\right)$.
Solution : Consider $x^{2} \equiv-1(\bmod 5)$. Clearly, $x_{0}=2$ is a solution of this quadratic congruence. Observe that $x_{0}^{2}=4=-1+(1) 5$ so that $b=1$ and consider the congruence $2 x_{0} y \equiv-b(\bmod 5)$, that is,

$$
2(2) y \equiv-1(\bmod 5) \Rightarrow 4 y \equiv-1(\bmod 5)
$$

Clearly, unique solution of this congruence is $y_{0}=1$.
Thus, $x_{1}=x_{0}+y_{0} p=2+(1) \cdot 5=7$ is a solution of $x^{2} \equiv-1\left(\bmod 5^{2}\right)$.
Moreover, $-7 \equiv 18\left(\bmod 5^{2}\right)$ is the only other solution.
Example 2 : Using above example solve $x^{2} \equiv-1\left(\bmod 5^{3}\right)$.
Solution : We know from above example that $x_{0}=7$ is a solution of $x^{2} \equiv-1\left(\bmod 5^{2}\right)$.
With this we proceed to next step $x_{0}^{2}=a+b \cdot 5^{2} \Rightarrow 49=(-1)+2 \times 5^{2}$ so that $b=2$. Now
consider $2 x_{0} y \equiv-b\left(\bmod 5^{2}\right)$, that is, $14 y \equiv-2\left(\bmod 5^{2}\right)$. Here $y_{0}=7$ is a solution of $14 y \equiv-2\left(\bmod 5^{2}\right)$. Thus $x_{1}=x_{0}+y_{0} p^{k}=7+7 \cdot 5^{2}=182$.

Thus $57 \equiv 182(\bmod 125)$ and $-68 \equiv 182(\bmod 125)$ are solutions of $x^{2} \equiv-1(\bmod 125)$.

In fact 57 and 68 are the only incongruent solutions of $x^{2} \equiv-1(\bmod 125)$.

## EXERCISE :

1. Solve $x^{2} \equiv 7\left(\bmod 3^{3}\right)$
2. Solve $x^{2} \equiv 31\left(\bmod 11^{4}\right)$
3. Solve $x^{2} \equiv 1\left(\bmod 2^{5}\right)$
4. Solve $x^{2}+5 x+6 \equiv 0\left(\bmod 5^{3}\right)$

## Answer :

1. $x \equiv 13,14\left(\bmod 3^{3}\right)$
2. $x \equiv 5008,9633\left(\bmod 11^{4}\right)$
$3 \quad 1,-1,1+2^{4},-1+2^{4}$
3. $x \equiv 122,123\left(\bmod 5^{3}\right)$

## REFERENCES:

1. David M. Burton, Elementary Number Theory, Tata McGraw Hill Education Private Limites, New Delhi, Sixth Edition(2011).
2. Ajay Kr Chaudhary, Introduction to Number Theory, New Central Book Agency (P) Ltd. Delhi, Kolkata, Pune, Ernakulam.

[^0]:    Number Theory | 5

[^1]:    Number Theory | 25

[^2]:    Number Theory | 100

